
Introduction to Oracle: SQL and PL/SQL

Instructor Guide • Volume 1

41010GC13
Production 1.3
July 1999
M08946

ORACLE®

Authors

Neena Kochhar
Ellen Gravina
Priya Nathan

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1998, 1999. All rights reserved.

This documentation contains proprietary information of Oracle Corporation. It is provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and is also protected by copyright law. Reverse engineering of the software is prohibited. If this documentation is delivered to a U.S. Government Agency of the Department of Defense, then it is delivered with Restricted Rights and the following legend is applicable:

**Technical Contributors
and Reviewers**

Claire Bennet
Christa Miethaner
Tony Hickman
Sherin Nassa
Nancy Greenberg
Hazel Russell
Kenneth Goetz
Piet van Zon
Ulrike Dietrich
Helen Robertson
Thomas Nguyen
Lisa Jansson
Kuljit Jassar

Restricted Rights Legend

Use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions for commercial computer software and shall be deemed to be Restricted Rights software under Federal law, as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of DFARS 252.227-7013, Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software (October 1988).

This material or any portion of it may not be copied in any form or by any means without the express prior written permission of Oracle Corporation. Any other copying is a violation of copyright law and may result in civil and/or criminal penalties.

If this documentation is delivered to a U.S. Government Agency not within the Department of Defense, then it is delivered with "Restricted Rights," as defined in FAR 52.227-14, Rights in Data-General, including Alternate III (June 1987).

The information in this document is subject to change without notice. If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them in writing to Education Products, Oracle Corporation, 500 Oracle Parkway, Box SB-6, Redwood Shores, CA 94065. Oracle Corporation does not warrant that this document is error-free.

Oracle and all references to Oracle products are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation.

Publisher

Jerry Brosnan

All other products or company names are used for identification purposes only, and may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Contents

Instructional Guidelines

Description of Snippets

Preface

Curriculum Map

Introduction

Objectives I-2
System Development Life Cycle I-3
Data Storage on Different Media I-5
Relational Database Concept I-6
Definition of Relational Database I-7
Data Models I-8
Entity Relationship Model I-9
Entity Relationship Modeling Conventions I-10
Relational Database Terminology I-12
Relating Multiple Tables I-13
Relational Database Properties I-14
Communicating with a RDBMS Using SQL I-15
Relational Database Management System I-16
Oracle8: Object Relational Database Management System I-17
Oracle8i: Internet Platform Database for Internet Computing Features I-18
Oracle Internet Platform I-19
SQL Statements I-20
About PL/SQL I-21
PL/SQL Environment I-22
Tables Used in the Course I-23
Summary I-24

1 Writing Basic SQL Statements

Objectives 1-2
Capabilities of SQL SELECT Statements 1-3
Basic SELECT Statement 1-4
Writing SQL Statements 1-5
Selecting All Columns 1-6
Selecting Specific Columns 1-7
Column Heading Defaults 1-8
Arithmetic Expressions 1-9

Using Arithmetic Operators 1-10
Operator Precedence 1-11
Using Parentheses 1-13
Defining a Null Value 1-14
Null Values in Arithmetic Expressions 1-15
Defining a Column Alias 1-16
Using Column Aliases 1-17
Concatenation Operator 1-18
Using the Concatenation Operator 1-19
Literal Character Strings 1-20
Using Literal Character Strings 1-21
Duplicate Rows 1-22
Eliminating Duplicate Rows 1-23
SQL and SQL*Plus Interaction 1-24
SQL Statements Versus SQL*Plus Commands 1-25
Overview of SQL*Plus 1-26
Logging In to SQL*Plus 1-27
Displaying Table Structure 1-28
SQL*Plus Editing Commands 1-30
SQL*Plus File Commands 1-32
Summary 1-33
Practice Overview 1-34

2 Restricting and Sorting Data

Objectives 2-2
Limiting Rows Using a Selection 2-3
Limiting Rows Selected 2-4
Using the WHERE Clause 2-5
Character Strings and Dates 2-6
Comparison Operators 2-7
Using the Comparison Operators 2-8
Other Comparison Operators 2-9
Using the BETWEEN Operator 2-10
Using the IN Operator 2-11
Using the LIKE Operator 2-12
Using the IS NULL Operator 2-14
Logical Operators 2-15
Using the AND Operator 2-16
Using the OR Operator 2-17

Using the NOT Operator 2-18
Rules of Precedence 2-19
ORDER BY Clause 2-22
Sorting in Descending Order 2-23
Sorting by Column Alias 2-24
Sorting by Multiple Columns 2-25
Summary 2-26
Practice Overview 2-27

3 Single-Row Functions

Objectives 3-2
SQL Functions 3-3
Two Types of SQL Functions 3-4
Single-Row Functions 3-5
Character Functions 3-7
Case Conversion Functions 3-9
Using Case Conversion Functions 3-10
Character Manipulation Functions 3-11
Using the Character Manipulation Functions 3-12
Number Functions 3-13
Using the ROUND Function 3-14
Using the TRUNC Function 3-15
Using the MOD Function 3-16
Working with Dates 3-17
Arithmetic with Dates 3-18
Using Arithmetic Operators with Dates 3-19
Date Functions 3-20
Using Date Functions 3-21
Conversion Functions 3-23
Implicit Datatype Conversion 3-24
Explicit Datatype Conversion 3-26
TO_CHAR Function with Dates 3-29
Elements of Date Format Model 3-30
Using TO_CHAR Function with Dates 3-32
TO_CHAR Function with Numbers 3-33
Using TO_CHAR Function with Numbers 3-34
TO_NUMBER and TO_DATE Functions 3-35
RR Date Format 3-36
NVL Function 3-37

Using the NVL Function 3-38
DECODE Function 3-39
Using the DECODE Function 3-40
Nesting Functions 3-42
Summary 3-44
Practice Overview 3-45

4 Displaying Data from Multiple Tables

Objectives 4-2
Obtaining Data from Multiple Tables 4-3
What Is a Join? 4-4
Cartesian Product 4-5
Generating a Cartesian Product 4-6
Types of Joins 4-7
What Is an Equijoin? 4-8
Retrieving Records with Equijoins 4-9
Qualifying Ambiguous Column Names 4-10
Additional Search Conditions Using the AND Operator 4-11
Using Table Aliases 4-12
Joining More Than Two Tables 4-13
Non-Equijoins 4-14
Retrieving Records with Non-Equijoins 4-15
Outer Joins 4-16
Using Outer Joins 4-18
Self Joins 4-19
Joining a Table to Itself 4-20
Summary 4-21
Practice Overview 4-22

5 Aggregating Data Using Group Functions

Objectives 5-2
What Are Group Functions? 5-3
Types of Group Functions 5-4
Using Group Functions 5-5
Using AVG and SUM Functions 5-6
Using MIN and MAX Functions 5-7
Using the COUNT Function 5-8

Group Functions and Null Values	5-10
Using the NVL Function with Group Functions	5-11
Creating Groups of Data	5-12
Creating Groups of Data: GROUP BY Clause	5-13
Using the GROUP BY Clause	5-14
Grouping by More Than One Column	5-16
Using the GROUP BY Clause on Multiple Columns	5-17
Illegal Queries Using Group Functions	5-18
Excluding Group Results	5-20
Excluding Group Results: HAVING Clause	5-21
Using the HAVING Clause	5-22
Nesting Group Functions	5-24
Summary	5-25
Practice Overview	5-26

6 Subqueries

Objectives	6-2
Using a Subquery to Solve a Problem	6-3
Subqueries	6-4
Using a Subquery	6-5
Guidelines for Using Subqueries	6-6
Types of Subqueries	6-7
Single-Row Subqueries	6-8
Executing Single-Row Subqueries	6-9
Using Group Functions in a Subquery	6-10
HAVING Clause with Subqueries	6-11
What Is Wrong with This Statement?	6-12
Will This Statement Work?	6-13
Multiple-Row Subqueries	6-14
Using ANY Operator in Multiple-Row Subqueries	6-15
Using ALL Operator in Multiple-Row Subqueries	6-16
Summary	6-17
Practice Overview	6-18

7 Multiple-Column Subqueries

Objectives	7-2
Multiple-Column Subqueries	7-3
Using Multiple-Column Subqueries	7-4

Column Comparisons	7-6
Nonpairwise Comparison Subquery	7-7
Nonpairwise Subquery	7-8
Null Values in a Subquery	7-9
Using a Subquery in the FROM Clause	7-10
Summary	7-11
Practice Overview	7-12

8 Producing Readable Output with SQL*Plus

Objectives	8-2
Interactive Reports	8-3
Substitution Variables	8-4
Using the & Substitution Variable	8-5
Using the SET VERIFY Command	8-6
Character and Date Values with Substitution Variables	8-7
Specifying Column Names, Expressions, and Text at Runtime	8-8
Using the && Substitution Variable	8-10
Defining User Variables	8-11
The ACCEPT Command	8-12
Using the ACCEPT Command	8-13
DEFINE and UNDEFINE Commands	8-14
Using the DEFINE Command	8-15
Customizing the SQL*Plus Environment	8-16
SET Command Variables	8-17
Saving Customizations in the login.sql File	8-18
SQL*Plus Format Commands	8-19
The COLUMN Command	8-20
Using the COLUMN Command	8-21
COLUMN Format Models	8-22
Using the BREAK Command	8-23
Using the TTITLE and BTITLE Commands	8-24
Creating a Script File to Run a Report	8-25
Sample Report	8-27
Summary	8-28
Practice Overview	8-29

9 Manipulating Data

Objectives	9-2
Data Manipulation Language	9-3

Adding a New Row to a Table	9-4
The INSERT Statement	9-5
Inserting New Rows	9-6
Inserting Rows with Null Values	9-7
Inserting Special Values	9-8
Inserting Specific Date Values	9-9
Inserting Values by Using Substitution Variables	9-10
Creating a Script with Customized Prompts	9-11
Copying Rows from Another Table	9-12
Changing Data in a Table	9-13
The UPDATE Statement	9-14
Updating Rows in a Table	9-15
Updating with Multiple-Column Subquery	9-16
Updating Rows Based on Another Table	9-17
Updating Rows: Integrity Constraint Error	9-18
Removing a Row from a Table	9-19
The DELETE Statement	9-20
Deleting Rows from a Table	9-21
Deleting Rows Based on Another Table	9-22
Deleting Rows: Integrity Constraint Error	9-23
Database Transactions	9-24
Advantages of COMMIT and ROLLBACK Statements	9-26
Controlling Transactions	9-27
Implicit Transaction Processing	9-28
State of the Data Before COMMIT or ROLLBACK	9-29
State of the Data After COMMIT	9-30
Committing Data	9-31
State of the Data After ROLLBACK	9-32
Rolling Back Changes to a Marker	9-33
Statement-Level Rollback	9-34
Read Consistency	9-35
Implementation of Read Consistency	9-36
Locking	9-37
Summary	9-38
Practice Overview	9-39

10 Creating and Managing Tables

Objectives	10-2
Database Objects	10-3

Naming Conventions 10-4
The CREATE TABLE Statement 10-5
Referencing Another User's Tables 10-6
The DEFAULT Option 10-7
Creating Tables 10-8
Tables in the Oracle Database 10-9
Querying the Data Dictionary 10-10
Datatypes 10-11
Creating a Table by Using a Subquery 10-13
The ALTER TABLE Statement 10-15
Adding a Column 10-16
Modifying a Column 10-18
Dropping a Column 10-19
SET UNUSED Option 10-20
Dropping a Table 10-21
Changing the Name of an Object 10-22
Truncating a Table 10-23
Adding Comments to a Table 10-24
Summary 10-25
Practice Overview 10-26

11 Including Constraints

Objectives 11-2
What Are Constraints? 11-3
Constraint Guidelines 11-4
Defining Constraints 11-5
The NOT NULL Constraint 11-7
The UNIQUE KEY Constraint 11-9
The PRIMARY KEY Constraint 11-11
The FOREIGN KEY Constraint 11-13
FOREIGN KEY Constraint Keywords 11-15
The CHECK Constraint 11-16
Adding a Constraint 11-17
Dropping a Constraint 11-19
Disabling Constraints 11-20
Enabling Constraints 11-21
Cascading Constraints 11-22
Viewing Constraints 11-24
Viewing the Columns Associated with Constraints 11-25
Summary 11-26
Practice Overview 11-27

12 Creating Views

Objectives 12-2
Database Objects 12-4
What Is a View? 12-5
Why Use Views? 12-6
Simple Views and Complex Views 12-7
Creating a View 12-8
Retrieving Data from a View 12-11
Querying a View 12-12
Modifying a View 12-13
Creating a Complex View 12-14
Rules for Performing DML Operations on a View 12-15
Using the WITH CHECK OPTION Clause 12-17
Denying DML Operations 12-18
Removing a View 12-19
Inline Views 12-20
“Top-N” Analysis 12-21
Performing “Top-N” Analysis 12-22
Example of “Top-N” Analysis 12-23
Summary 12-24
Practice Overview 12-26

13 Other Database Objects

Objectives 13-2
Database Objects 13-3
What Is a Sequence? 13-4
The CREATE SEQUENCE Statement 13-5
Creating a Sequence 13-6
Confirming Sequences 13-7
NEXTVAL and CURRVAL Pseudocolumns 13-8
Using a Sequence 13-10
Modifying a Sequence 13-12
Guidelines for Modifying a Sequence 13-13
Removing a Sequence 13-14
What Is an Index? 13-15
How Are Indexes Created? 13-16
Creating an Index 13-17
When to Create an Index 13-18
When Not to Create an Index 13-19
Confirming Indexes 13-20
Function-Based Indexes 13-21

Removing an Index 13-22
Synonyms 13-23
Creating and Removing Synonyms 13-24
Summary 13-25
Practice Overview 13-26

14 Controlling User Access

Objectives 14-2
Controlling User Access 14-3
Privileges 14-4
System Privileges 14-5
Creating Users 14-6
User System Privileges 14-7
Granting System Privileges 14-8
What Is a Role? 14-9
Creating and Granting Privileges to a Role 14-10
Changing Your Password 14-11
Object Privileges 14-12
Granting Object Privileges 14-14
Using WITH GRANT OPTION and PUBLIC Keywords 14-15
Confirming Privileges Granted 14-16
How to Revoke Object Privileges 14-17
Revoking Object Privileges 14-18
Summary 14-19
Practice Overview 14-20

15 SQL Workshop

Workshop Overview 15-2

16 Declaring Variables

Objectives 16-2
About PL/SQL 16-3
Benefits of PL/SQL 16-4
PL/SQL Block Structure 16-6
Block Types 16-8
Program Constructs 16-9
Use of Variables 16-11
Handling Variables in PL/SQL 16-12
Types of Variables 16-13
Declaring PL/SQL Variables 16-16
Naming Rules 16-18
Assigning Values to Variables 16-19

Variable Initialization and Keywords	16-20
Scalar Datatypes	16-21
Base Scalar Datatypes	16-22
Scalar Variable Declarations	16-24
The %TYPE Attribute	16-25
Declaring Variables with the %TYPE Attribute	16-26
Declaring Boolean Variables	16-27
PL/SQL Record Structure	16-28
LOB Datatype Variables	16-29
Bind Variables	16-31
Referencing Non-PL/SQL Variables	16-32
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE	16-33
Summary	16-34
Practice Overview	16-36

17 Writing Executable Statements

Objectives	17-2
PL/SQL Block Syntax and Guidelines	17-3
Commenting Code	17-6
SQL Functions in PL/SQL	17-7
PL/SQL Functions	17-8
Datatype Conversion	17-9
Nested Blocks and Variable Scope	17-11
Operators in PL/SQL	17-14
Using Bind Variables	17-16
Programming Guidelines	17-17
Code Naming Conventions	17-18
Indenting Code	17-19
Determining Variable Scope	17-20
Summary	17-21
Practice Overview	17-22

18 Interacting with the Oracle Server

Objectives	18-2
SQL Statements in PL/SQL	18-3
SELECT Statements in PL/SQL	18-4
Retrieving Data in PL/SQL	18-6
Manipulating Data Using PL/SQL	18-8
Inserting Data	18-9
Updating Data	18-10
Deleting Data	18-11
Naming Conventions	18-12

COMMIT and ROLLBACK Statements 18-14
 SQL Cursor 18-15
 SQL Cursor Attributes 18-16
 Summary 18-18
 Practice Overview 18-20

19 Writing Control Structures

 Objectives 19-2
 Controlling PL/SQL Flow of Execution 19-3
 IF Statements 19-4
 Simple IF Statements 19-5
 IF-THEN-ELSE Statement Execution Flow 19-6
 IF-THEN-ELSE Statements 19-7
 IF-THEN-ELSIF Statement Execution Flow 19-8
 IF-THEN-ELSIF Statements 19-9
 Building Logical Conditions 19-10
 Logic Tables 19-11
 Boolean Conditions 19-12
 Iterative Control: LOOP Statements 19-13
 Basic Loop 19-14
 FOR Loop 19-16
 WHILE Loop 19-19
 Nested Loops and Labels 19-21
 Summary 19-23
 Practice Overview 19-24

20 Working with Composite Datatypes

 Objectives 20-2
 Composite Datatypes 20-3
 PL/SQL Records 20-4
 Creating a PL/SQL Record 20-5
 PL/SQL Record Structure 20-7
 The %ROWTYPE Attribute 20-8
 Advantages of Using %ROWTYPE 20-9
 The %ROWTYPE Attribute 20-10
 PL/SQL Tables 20-11
 Creating a PL/SQL Table 20-12
 PL/SQL Table Structure 20-13
 Creating a PL/SQL Table 20-14

Using PL/SQL Table Methods 20-15
PL/SQL Table of Records 20-16
Example of PL/SQL Table of Records 20-17
Summary 20-18
Practice Overview 20-19

21 Writing Explicit Cursors

Objectives 21-2
About Cursors 21-3
Explicit Cursor Functions 21-4
Controlling Explicit Cursors 21-5
Declaring the Cursor 21-7
Opening the Cursor 21-9
Fetching Data from the Cursor 21-10
Closing the Cursor 21-12
Explicit Cursor Attributes 21-13
Controlling Multiple Fetches 21-14
The %ISOPEN Attribute 21-15
The %NOTFOUND and %ROWCOUNT Attributes 21-16
Cursors and Records 21-17
Cursor FOR Loops 21-18
Cursor FOR Loops Using Subqueries 21-20
Summary 21-21
Practice Overview 21-23

22 Advanced Explicit Cursor Concepts

Objectives 22-2
Cursors with Parameters 22-3
The FOR UPDATE Clause 22-5
The WHERE CURRENT OF Clause 22-7
Cursors with Subqueries 22-9
Summary 22-10
Practice Overview 22-11

23 Handling Exceptions

Objectives 23-2
Handling Exceptions with PL/SQL 23-3
Handling Exceptions 23-4
Exception Types 23-5
Trapping Exceptions 23-6

Trapping Exceptions Guidelines 23-7
Trapping Predefined Oracle Server Errors 23-8
Predefined Exception 23-10
Trapping Non-Predefined Oracle Server Errors 23-11
Non-Predefined Error 23-12
Functions for Trapping Exceptions 23-13
Trapping User-Defined Exceptions 23-15
User-Defined Exception 23-16
Calling Environments 23-17
Propagating Exceptions 23-18
RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR Procedure 23-19
Summary 23-21
Practice Overview 23-22

A Practice Solutions

B Table Descriptions and Data

Index

Instructional Guidelines

Instructional Techniques: Tools and Tips

Introduction

Introduction to Oracle: SQL and PL/SQL is often the first course that many Oracle students attend. You might be their first contact with any Oracle personnel.

At the same time, this may be one of the first courses that you teach as an Oracle instructor, so you might appreciate some help in achieving the best performance possible at an early stage of your career.

The tools and tips in this section come from the highly recommended AIT (Advanced Instructional Techniques) class that a lot of instructors attend at some stage after joining Oracle Education. If you attend that class, you will learn all that is here—and much more.

Aim of This Document

- To help you make this the best technical course that students have ever attended, to excite them to learn, and to make them want to come back for more.
- To give you some tips and techniques to help you vary your lecture style, avoid monotony in classes, and make the learning experience more entertaining and interesting for both the students and yourself.

This document is not a substitute for your own personal training and delivery instructions that you receive from your Education department.

Using This Document

None of these suggestions and techniques are mandatory. They are simply examples of how to introduce variety and change of pace into your classes.

Not all techniques suit all instructors. Choose those with which you feel most comfortable. If possible, test the techniques with a fellow instructor who is also eager to encourage interactive learning in the classroom.

Topics

- The Learning Environment
- Icebreakers
- Lecture Styles
- Participation and Involvement
- Forming Effective Questions
- Bibliography

The Learning Environment

Introduction

Establish a pleasant and effective learning environment at the start of a class.

Tips to Improve the Class Climate

When students first arrive at a course, they have doubts, concerns, and fears. To change these negative feelings to positive ones, aim to make students feel: welcome, safe, comfortable, important, competent, understood, and responsible. Think carefully about what you can say and do to foster these feelings of comfort and familiarity in your students, especially in the first 30 minutes of the course.

Students learn more effectively in a physically and emotionally comfortable environment.

Early Arrivals

Some students arrive early at the classroom. If so, do not ignore them—welcome them with a smile. Make them feel comfortable by introducing yourself and explaining some details about the class and the environment.

Housekeeping

Explaining the “housekeeping” ground rules at the start of a class is very important to make students feel comfortable and confident in their surroundings. Remember to explain some of the following points:

- Layout of building: Point out the location of restrooms, refreshments, and so on.
- Timing of class: State the start and end times and lunchtime.
- Questions: Encourage students to ask questions during the class.

Personal Introductions

Allowing time for students to introduce themselves is important for you and for them. When you know that course timings are tight, it is very tempting to reduce time allowed for introductions or skip them altogether, but you do so at your peril. Introductions help foster a good relationship between all the students.

Use introductions to find out more about your audience: those who might not have sufficient prerequisite knowledge, those who might cause problems because they are eager to prove themselves in front of others, and so on.

Instructional Guidelines

Cohesiveness

The following table includes many suggestions for encouraging a feeling of cohesiveness among your class students. Although some small group activities are not always convenient in large technical classes, consider the suggestions—you might not always be running large technical classes.

Make your own notes in the blank right column. Which ones have you tried successfully in the past? Which ones might you consider in the future?

No.	Suggestion	Notes
1	Use small group work if possible. Create an identity for each small group (name, color, nickname).	
2	Point out that training is the time to ask questions, make mistakes, experiment, and try out new skills.	
3	Use an icebreaker that brings out shared experiences (example: give them five minutes to list things they all have in common).	
4	Use more icebreakers as the course progresses, possibly something that is related to the course material, such as an interesting SQL problem that can be solved using nested functions.	
5	Emphasize learning from other learners.	
6	Encourage openness in your students by being open yourself.	
7	Schedule occasional activities where the only goal is to relax and have fun for a few minutes.	
8	Make your viewpoint only as significant as theirs. Adopt the role of leader and guide rather than expert.	
9	Do not intervene too quickly if learners are struggling. Too few interventions are better than too many.	
10	Relate the course content to the students' job roles. Try using real-world examples and analogies.	

Thought for the Day

Never do for the learners what they can do for themselves.

Efficient Use of Instructional Time

No.	Suggestion	Notes
1	Develop job aids to reduce the need for instruction.	
2	Develop your own visuals to supplement the lessons, such as whiteboard diagrams, and flipchart notes.	
3	Spend most time on content that is important and difficult to learn. Devote less time to content that is less important, less difficult to learn, and can be handled well with job aids.	
4	Minimize time on presentation and maximize time for practice and feedback. Reduce your “talking time” as much as possible. Students learn by doing.	
5	Let students know what will and will not be covered to minimize digressions.	
6	Always start on time and ask students to be on time.	
7	Give clear directions for exercises (this minimizes wasted time in debating what to do).	
8	During exercises, circulate to help with blockages and spur the groups on.	
9	Announce how much time is left on exercises to keep groups on schedule.	
10	Avoid extending time limits on exercises.	
11	With small-group work, do not look at the work done by all groups. Discuss the work done by two or three groups, and then ask if other groups have anything new to add.	

Icebreakers

Introduction

You can use icebreakers successfully throughout the course.

- At the beginning of a class: Choose something that helps students get to know others in the class.
- After break times: Occupy and entertain those who return early from some breaks, while waiting for others.
- Afternoon: Avoid the graveyard-shift syndrome. Give students a short, light-hearted activity to refresh them after lunch or in the late afternoon.

Suggestions

The following pages, contain some ideas for icebreakers.

Two example puzzle sheets are also included:

- How's Business
- You're Fired

The puzzle samples included here might not be suitable in all countries. Use these ideas to make up your own puzzles.

Icebreakers to Use as Class Introductions

You can vary your class introductions with either of these icebreakers.

Partner Introductions

- Ask each person to select a partner who is a stranger to them.
- Give ten minutes for partners to interview each other and find out as much as possible about each other.
- Suggest that they take notes during interviewing.
- After the interviews, ask each person to stand in turn and introduce their partner to the entire group (encourage them to refer to their notes freely).

Note: This icebreaker works best with smaller groups (fewer than 20).

For larger groups, it is too time-consuming.

Cocktail Party

Use this icebreaker with larger groups.

- Ask people to circulate and speak to one person at a time to get acquainted.
- After one minute, announce “Change” and have everyone find a new person with whom to get acquainted for one minute.
- Continue changing every minute until there have been opportunities for people to meet most of the others.

Icebreakers for After-Lunch Activity

Try using one of these to wake up the group after lunch.

Common Ground

Use this icebreaker for small groups or for each small group sitting together as a team (example: four to six people).

- Give the groups a specific time (example: five minutes) to list everything they can find that they all have in common. Tell them to avoid the obvious (example: “we are all taking this workshop”). Ask them to make a list.
- After the time is up, ask each group how many items they have in their list.
- For fun, ask them to announce some of the most interesting items in their lists.

Instructional Guidelines

True and False

Use this icebreaker for small groups or for each small group sitting together as a team (four to six people).

- Ask each person in the group to list four facts about themselves on paper. Three of those facts should be true and one should be false.
- One person in the group begins by reading his or her four items out loud to the others.
- The group then tries to guess which fact is false.
- The person in question reveals which one was false.
- The others then read their four items in turn until everyone has finished

Me Too

- Everyone in the small group gets ten (or five) pennies/toothpicks/scraps of paper (whatever).
- The first person states something they have done (example: water skiing).
- Everyone else who has done the same thing admits it and puts one penny in the middle of the table.
- Then the second person states something (example: “I have eaten frogs’ legs”).
- Everyone who has done it puts another penny in the center.
- Continue until someone has no pennies left.

Five Guests

- Each person reports to their group the answers to the following questions: If you could have any five people, living or dead, as guests in your home for an evening, who would they be and what would you talk about?
- After hearing from everyone, the group selects their all-star team of five guests from all those reported. Put these five on a flipchart so other groups can read them.

Dreams and Nightmares

- Each person states a dream about something positive that they hope will happen in this course.
- Each person states a nightmare about something negative that they hope will not happen in this course.
- Put the dreams and nightmares on a flipchart so all groups can read them.

Notice that most of these icebreakers are brief exercises that focus on getting to know the people they will work with. If groups are changed regularly, start each session with a different icebreaker.

A Ball Game

This is an activity to refresh and awaken flagging spirits, perhaps in the afternoon. You need a ball—tennis ball, beach ball, koosh ball, whatever you prefer.

- Stand with the students, all in a large circle.
- Throw the ball to one student. Before throwing it call the person's name.
- The student receives the ball and replies "Thank you, Fred"—that is, "Thank you" followed by your name.
- Then the student calls another person's name and throws the ball to them. The receiving student must always say "Thank you, ..." and name the person who threw the ball.
- Continue until everyone has received and thrown the ball at least once.

Some might feel uncomfortable in encouraging adult students to play this apparently simple game, but it is surprisingly effective and well received. It usually ends in laughter and release of the embarrassed tension and fear that many students have early in a new course, in unfamiliar surroundings.

Instructional Guidelines

How's Business

Match the answer to the question "How's Business?" on the right to the profession on the left.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| _____ h _____ | Banker | (a) I'm into the red |
| _____ | Quilt Maker | (b) A trifle before average |
| _____ | Wine Taster | (c) I'm fighting |
| _____ | Psychiatrist | (d) I'm making a splash |
| _____ | Dessert Chef | (e) Splendid |
| _____ | Maternity Clothes Salesperson | (f) Down |
| _____ | Boxer | (g) As you would expect |
| _____ | Diver | (h) Interesting |
| | | (i) Why do you ask? |
| | | (j) Slumping |

You're Fired

Match the style of phrase meaning “You’re Fired” on the right to the profession on the left.

- | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|-----|-----------------|
| _____d_____ | Gardener | (a) | Hung out to dry |
| _____ | Breadmaker | (b) | Deposed |
| _____ | Laundry Worker | (c) | Disheartened |
| _____ | Exorcist | (d) | Weeded out |
| _____ | Model | (e) | Scrubbed |
| _____ | Cardiologist | (f) | Cashiered |
| _____ | Surgeon | (g) | You’re toast |
| _____ | Politician | (h) | Devoted |
| | | (i) | Unauthorized |
| | | (j) | Repossessed |

Lecture Styles

Introduction

Lectures can become boring, inactive, and repetitious. Try some of the following variations. Plan where you can use some of these styles to put across some dull topics in a more interesting, and therefore more memorable, way.

Find ways to encourage student participation through your lecture style. Break up long lectures with question-and-answer sessions. Summarize and review small sections of information frequently.

Multiple-Choice Lecture

- Give each participant four pieces of colored paper (example: red, green, blue, yellow). Label each piece (example: red is A, green is B, blue is C, yellow is D).
- Prepare a series of multiple-choice questions on the content of your lecture.
- Put each multiple-choice question on an overhead transparency or flipchart.
- As you lecture, pause every few minutes and ask questions by showing overheads or revealing the flipchart.
- Ask students to indicate their answer by holding up the appropriate piece of colored paper.
- If learners make errors, repeat the content or have a brief discussion to clarify the errors.

Perhaps there is no life after death, just more lectures.

Keywords

- As you speak, write single keywords on a flipchart to create an emerging content outline.
- If more than one page is needed, tear off each page when it is full and tape it on the wall.
- Put no more than seven keywords on a page.
- When finished, ask the students to review by recalling the content that is triggered by each keyword. The review can be an individual exercise or it can be done through discussion in small groups.

Cartoon Lecture

- Find cartoons that relate to the content of your lecture. Transfer the cartoons onto overhead transparencies.
- For each key point in the lecture, show the cartoon after you have described the content verbally.
- When the lecture is finished, show each cartoon again and have the students review the content using the cartoon as a mental trigger. The review can be an individual exercise or it can be done through discussion in groups.

The mind is like the stomach. It's not how much you put into it that counts, but how much it digests.

Examples and Exceptions

- Good lectures often contain examples, analogies, and metaphors.
- As you deliver a lecture, ask students in small groups to create an example or analogy of the point you are describing.
- For a change of pace, ask them to create exceptions to the point.
- Encourage learners to use situations from their own experience as the source for examples, where possible.

Fill in the Blank

- Design a printed outline of the key ideas to be covered in the lecture.
- Leave out a word or short phrase in each item in the outline.
- As you lecture, ask students to fill in the missing words.

Before I speak, I have something important to say—Groucho Marx

Search and Learn

- Rather than deliver a lecture, put the content in printed form. Use headings and bullets rather than paragraphs.
- Give learners a series of questions to answer by searching through the printed material. If you want a competitive element, have small groups search quickly for the answer. The group that finds it first raises their hands and announces the location of the answer. If they are correct, they receive a point. At the end, you could have a prize for the winning group.

Instructional Guidelines

Graphic Association

- Divide a flipchart or overhead transparency into four to six sections.
- Put a graphic (not words) in each section. The graphics should relate in some way to your lecture content.
- Deliver the lecture while referring to the graphic, one section at a time.
- When finished, remove the graphics from view.
- Ask students to sketch the graphics quickly from memory (neatness or sketch quality is not important).
- Then ask students to recall the content using each graphic as a prompt.

Some instructors try to give you knowledge; others try to show you where it is.

Planted Questions

- Give out course materials in a manual or handouts.
- Give each individual or group some questions for which to find answers by looking at the materials. Each group has a different set of questions.
- Intersperse lecturing with questions that are answered by the individual or group that was assigned that question.

I was pleased to be able to answer promptly. I said “I don’t know.”—Mark Twain

Abbreviated Lecture

- Avoid covering content that learners already know. Have small groups list everything they know about the topic on a flipchart.
- The lecture then fills in the gaps, including only the content that the groups omitted.
- For emphasis of important points, move toward groups’ flipcharts and put an asterisk beside key points.

Blessed is the trainer who has nothing to say, and cannot be persuaded to say it.

Sensory Preferences

Different students have different preferred methods of learning. When students have a choice, they learn best in their preferred sensory channel:

- Visual learners prefer to see and observe.
- Auditory learners prefer to hear and listen.
- Kinesthetic learners prefer to do rather than see or hear.

Try to establish a pattern in which students will see, hear, and do in each lesson, so that all three preferences are addressed.

If a student does not understand your explanation of a particular feature or topic, avoid simply repeating the information in exactly the same way. Try to use a different sense. Example: If at first you gave a verbal explanation, try to explain with a diagram on the whiteboard or a demonstration instead.

Note: If this area of instructional technique interests you, consider doing some background reading on NLP (Neuro-Linguistic Programming). Two books by O'Connor and Seymour are listed in the Bibliography at the end of this section.

Participation and Involvement

Consider this table. Which of these do you already do? Consider adopting some suggestions that you have not previously tried.

No.	Suggestion	Notes
1	Arrange frequent small group sessions.	
2	Ask for frequent neighbor discussions to guarantee that everyone participates.	
3	Move away from the center of the room. Sit rather than stand. Move to the back of the room to take emphasis off yourself.	
4	Ask many questions.	
5	When a question is asked, get everyone to think and, if applicable, write down a brief response, before someone answers.	
6	Sometimes ask people to stand when they have written down their answers. When everyone is standing, ask for answers. (Standing provides a stretch and keeps people alert.)	
7	Relay questions back to learners.	
8	When a lengthy answer is required, ask a number of students to give only part of the answer each.	
9	Ask “yes-no” questions and poll the group by asking them to raise their hands.	
10	Use puzzles to develop a response habit.	
11	Ask learners to give feedback to each other and to react to each other’s comments.	
12	Give students a handout with questions to answer. Pause periodically and get them to answer questions. Then give feedback.	
13	Be quiet when you want participation (the students will fill the silence).	

No.	Suggestion	Notes
14	When possible, devote two-thirds or more of a lesson to student activity and feedback regarding that activity. Try to limit instructor input to one-third or less.	
15	Give students ten minutes at the beginning to ask questions about the course or the instructor. Get small groups to create questions together.	
16	After a lecture or discussion, ask groups to summarize the main points.	
17	To generate questions from participants: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • State directly that you genuinely want questions. • Pause occasionally and ask for questions. • Use slipwriting: ask everyone to write one question on paper and pass it to you. Read all questions out loud. Then answer or relay some questions back to the group. • Use neighbor discussions by asking people to pair off with a partner and together come up with one question on the material. • Ask groups to devise tough questions to be answered by other groups. 	

Thought for the Day

Stimulation and excitement during training is not a spectator sport: it is based on participation and fun.

Forming Effective Questions

The following points will help you to make your questioning more effective.

- These are the characteristics of a good question:
 - Concise and contains only one idea
 - Thought provoking and interesting
 - Focused on important material
 - Open-ended (requires more than a “yes” or “no” answer)
 - Requires reasoning rather than memory
 - Challenging but answerable
- There are four directions for questions:
 - Direct: Ask a specific student.
 - Overhead: Ask the students in general; anyone can answer.
 - Relay: Ask someone else to answer a student’s question.
 - Reverse: Mirror a student’s question back to the same student.
- Do not repeat students’ answers. Otherwise, students may stop listening to each other.
- Use “crossfire” questioning. Refer questions to others, such as:
 - “How would you have answered that?”
 - “Why do you think that?”
 - “What do you think of that answer?”
 - “What evidence do you have for that?”
- When answering a question, use these techniques:
 - When someone asks you a question, smile, take a step toward them, and say “yes” as if you are pleased to have a question.
 - Check to be sure everyone heard and understood the question.
 - Answer briefly and state reasons for your answer.
 - Tie your answer to key points in your lesson, if possible.
 - If you do not know an answer, admit it—never bluff. Ask if anyone else knows the answer. If no one does, offer to find out.
 - If someone asks a contentious question, give a direct and friendly answer. Do not be provoked into a defensive position.
 - If someone asks a question that you will be covering later, say “That’s a good question. We will be covering that in a few minutes.”

Bibliography

- Eitlington, Julius. *The Winning Trainer*. Gulf Publishing, 1984.
- Forbess-Green, Sue. *Encyclopedia of Icebreakers*. University Associates, 1990.
- Jones, Philip (ed.). *Adult Learning in Your Classroom*. Lakewood Publications, 1982.
- Newstrom, John, and Edward Scannell. *Games Trainers Play*. McGraw-Hill, 1980.
- O'Connor, Joseph, and John Seymour. *Introducing Neuro-Linguistic Programming*. Thorsons, 1995.
- O'Connor, Joseph, and John Seymour. *Training with NLP*. Thorsons, 1994.
- Pike, Robert. *Creative Training Techniques Handbook*. Lakewood Publications, 1989.
- Scannell, Edward, and John Newstrom. *More Games Trainers Play*. McGraw-Hill, 1991.

Instructional Guidelines

Description of Snippets

.....

Snippets

This course includes animation and activity snippets. A description of these snippets follows.

Animation Snippet: “Processing SQL Statements”

“Processing SQL Statements” is an executable program that contains five animation snippets. Each snippet is a high-quality three-dimensional animation with professional narration about how SQL statements interact with the Oracle server architecture.

An animation snippet can be thought of a short video tape segment that is played through a computer. Each snippet is designed to be played during any ILT course that can benefit by its content. Snippets can either replace or augment the PowerPoint slides that you would usually use to cover that particular topic (see animation titles and descriptions below).

You access the animation by launching a windows program called PROC_SQL.EXE. You are given a menu with the five buttons. Clicking on a menu button starts that animation. During an animation, you use VCR-style controls in the lower left corner of the screen to rewind, pause, play, and fast-forward each animation. The animations will start automatically by default if the VCR controls are not used. For this course, you will be showing only two animations (out of the five available): “Establishing a Database Session” (short) and “Processing a Query” (short).

Note that all animations require the use of sound and a computer monitor set to thousands of colors. Because all classrooms may not be adequately equipped to run these animation snippets, they have been made optional. Detailed technical requirements can be found by reading the SETUP.TXT document.

Title	Length	Description
“Establishing a Database Session” (short) <i>(Show)</i>	0:55	Presents a short and simple overview of a database session being established. This includes the user process being created, the user process connecting to the server process, and server process in turn establishing a database session with the server.
“Establishing a Database Session” (long) <i>(Do not show)</i>	1:30	This is the same animation as the short version, only with an in-depth look at the components that make up the Oracle Server architecture. This animation identifies the data dictionary cache, shared pool, SGA, instance, background process, and the database files.

“Processing a Query” (short) <i>(Show)</i>	1:45	This animation displays a SELECT statement being entered. During this animation, the server process looks for the SELECT statement in memory, parses the statement, optimizes the statement, creates an execution plan, gathers the requested data, and finally displays that data for the user.
“Processing a Query” (long) <i>(Do not show)</i>	2:25	The long version displays the same procedure as the short version, but more detail is given. Specific parts of the Oracle Server architecture are identified as the SELECT statement is processed. These parts include the shared SQL memory cache, data buffer cache, and PGA.
“Processing a DML Statement” <i>(Do not show)</i>	3:10	This animation displays how an UPDATE and then a COMMIT statement are processed. The UPDATE statement follows a four step procedure: (1) load the data, (2) lock the data, (3) record the change, (4) save the old value. Once these four steps are completed, the user enters a COMMIT statement. The Server Process then processes the COMMIT. First the data is flagged in the redo log buffer. Next the log writer reads the data and writes it to the redo log file. Finally, a confirmation of the COMMIT is displayed for the user.

Activity Snippets

Two activity snippets have been created for this course. These activities are to be used in the “Creating and Managing Tables” lesson and the “Creating Views” lesson, respectively.

The first activity is a matching game called “Space Flip.” The second activity is a board game called “Space Race.” Both activities present questions for the student to answer and provide useful tips aimed at reinforcing the ILT course materials.

The student should find these activities fun, entertaining, and informative. Instructionally, these activities reinforce and test the content found in their respective lessons. The design provides a mental break for the students between the lecture and practice portions of the lessons.

Note that both activities are accessed by using a Web browser. Since most of the classrooms have Netscape 4.0, you are strongly encouraged to use these activity snippets. Technical notes on these activities can be found in the SETUP.TXT file.

Space Flip

- Time to complete: 5 minutes
- Use after the “Creating and Managing Tables” lesson

In this activity, the student finds a word that fits in a fill-in-the-blank questions (see the following sample). As with a traditional matching game, the screen is divided into a number of squares. Clicking a square is clicked, reveals what is behind it. If the two objects being revealed match (in this case, the word fits in the blank), the two squares are removed from the screen.

To increase the number of fill-in-the-blank questions, three sets of cards are used. Each set of cards has eight different fill-in-the-blank questions, with eight words that fit in those blanks.

Sample question:

To create a table, the user must have the _____ privilege.

CREATE TABLE

Space Race

- Time to complete: 5 minutes
- Use after the “Creating Views” lesson

Like the matching activity, this activity is used to present questions to the student. This activity is set up like a board game with a start and finish. Between these points there are three types of “squares” that the student can land on: questions, tips, and black holes. Questions are either true-false or multiple-choice questions (see the following samples), and tips are statements or facts taken from the lesson. A black hole is a penalty square that is used to add an element of luck to the game. The goal of the game is to answer enough questions correctly to reach the finish before the oxygen supply of the ship runs out. Bonus tanks of oxygen are given for landing on the tips squares, and rolling a black hole sends the ship back to the nearest black-hole square.

Sample Questions:

Although the USER_VIEWS data dictionary view displays the names of all views, it does not show the SELECT statements used to create them.

Answer = False

Which one of the following commands is added to the CREATE VIEW statement to create a view regardless of whether the base table(s) exist(s)?

- (a) NOFORCE
- (b) WITH READ OPTION
- (c) REPLACE
- (d) FORCE

Answer = D

.....

Preface

Profile

Before You Begin This Course

Before you begin this course, you should be able to use a graphical user interface (GUI).

Required prerequisites are familiarity with data processing concepts and techniques.

How This Course Is Organized

Introduction to Oracle: SQL and PL/SQL is an instructor-led course featuring lectures and hands-on exercises. Online demonstrations and written practice sessions reinforce the concepts and skills introduced.

Related Publications

Oracle Publications

Title	Part Number
<i>Oracle8i Server, Release 8.1.5</i>	A68826-01
<i>Oracle8i Concepts, Release 8.1.5</i>	A67781-01
<i>Oracle8i SQL Reference Manual, Release 8.1.5</i>	A67779-01
<i>Oracle8i Server Application Developer's Guide</i>	A68003-01
<i>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference, Release 8.1.5</i>	A66736-01
<i>SQL*Plus Quick Reference, Release 8.1.5</i>	A66735-01
<i>PL/SQL User's Guide and Reference, Release 8.1.5</i>	A67842-01

Additional Publications

- System release bulletins
- Installation and user's guides
- *read.me* files
- International Oracle User's Group (IOUG) articles
- *Oracle Magazine*

Typographic Conventions

What follows are two lists of typographical conventions used specifically within text or within code.

Typographic Conventions Within Text

Convention	Object or Term	Example
Uppercase	Commands, functions, column names, table names, PL/SQL objects, schemas	Use the SELECT command to view information stored in the LAST_NAME column of the EMP table.
Lowercase, italic	Filenames, syntax variables, usernames, passwords	where: <i>role</i> is the name of the role to be created.
Initial cap	Trigger and button names	Assign a When-Validate-Item trigger to the ORD block. Choose Cancel.
Italic	Books, names of courses and manuals, and emphasized words or phrases	For more information on the subject see <i>Oracle Server SQL Language Reference Manual</i>
Quotation marks	Lesson module titles referenced within a course	Do <i>not</i> save changes to the database. This subject is covered in Lesson 3, “Working with Objects.”

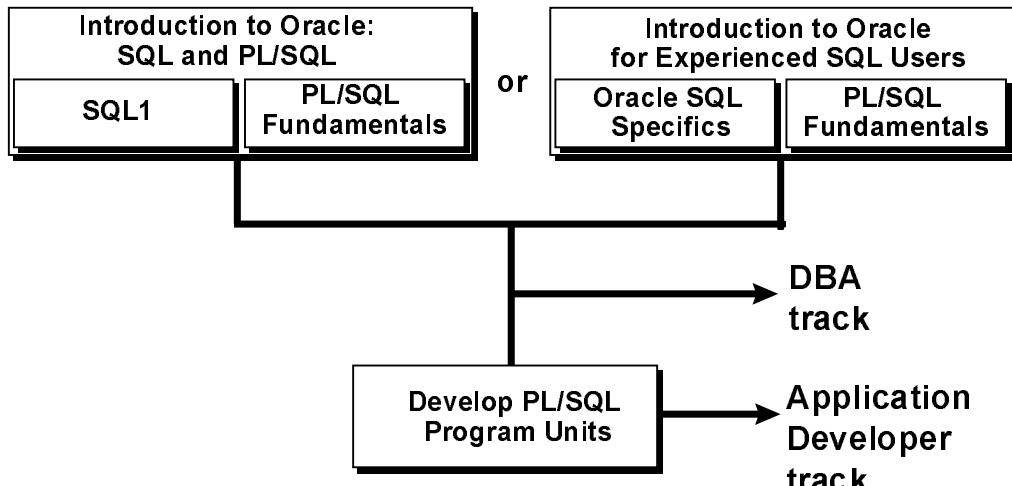
Typographic Conventions (continued)

Typographic Conventions Within Code

Convention	Object or Term	Example
Uppercase	Commands, functions	SQL> SELECT userid 2 FROM emp;
Lowercase, italic	Syntax variables	SQL> CREATE ROLE role;
Initial cap	Forms triggers	Form module: ORD Trigger level: S_ITEM.QUANTITY item Trigger name: When-Validate-Item .
Lowercase	Column names, table names, filenames, PL/SQL objects	.
		OG_ACTIVATE_LAYER (OG_GET_LAYER ('prod_pie_layer')) .
		SQL> SELECT last_name 2 FROM emp;
Bold	Text that must be entered by a user	SQLDBA> DROP USER scott 2> IDENTIFIED BY tiger;

Curriculum Map

Integrated Languages Curriculum: Certification Tracks



Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE

Integrated Languages Curriculum: Certification Tracks

Introduction to Oracle: SQL and PL/SQL consists of two modules, *SQL1* and *PL/SQL Fundamentals*. This is the first course that you take for the DBA or Application Developer track. *SQL1* covers creating database structures and storing, retrieving, and manipulating data in a relational database. *PL/SQL Fundamentals* covers creating PL/SQL blocks of application code.

For people who have worked with other relational databases and have knowledge of SQL, another module called *Oracle SQL Specifics* is offered. This module covers the SQL statements that are not part of ANSI SQL but are specific to Oracle. This module combined with *PL/SQL Fundamentals* forms *Introduction to Oracle for Experienced SQL Users*.

Introduction to Oracle: SQL and PL/SQL and *Introduction to Oracle for Experienced SQL Users* are considered equivalent and after taking one of them, you can move on to the DBA track. For the Application Developer track, you must take the *Develop PL/SQL Program Units* course. This course teaches you how to write PL/SQL procedures, functions, packages, and triggers.

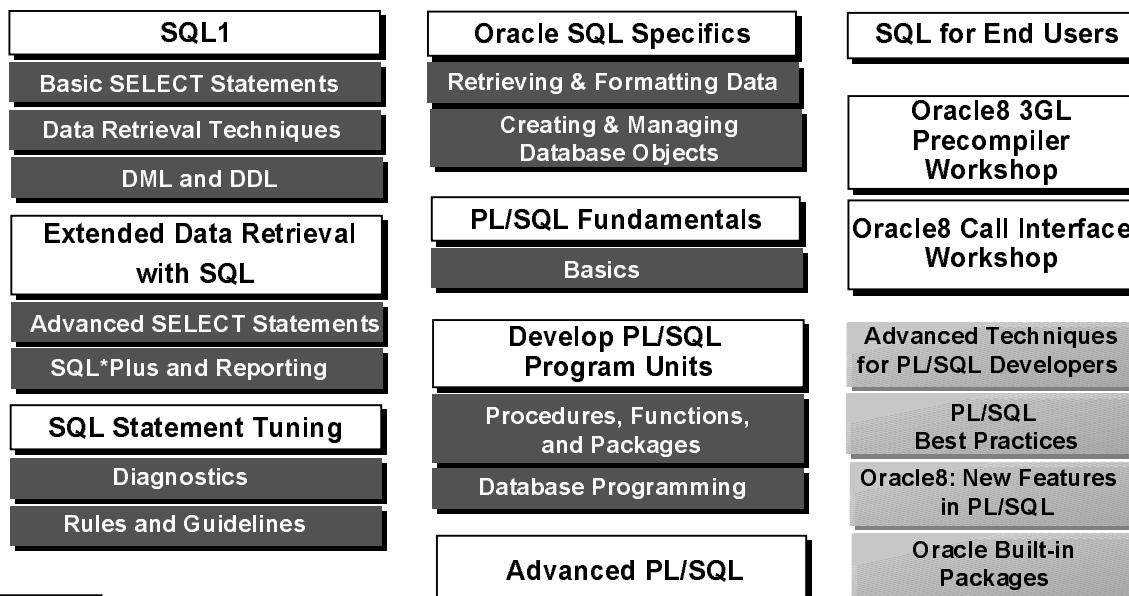
Instructor Note

The languages curriculum has a new presentation style. The enhanced graphics and animation will make it easier for you to convey concepts while making concepts easier to grasp for participants. Multimedia snippets are included to introduce variety in the classroom.

These courses make up the certification track for DBAs and Application Developers. Explain these two tracks to the participants.

For more information, refer participants to the Oracle Web site:
<http://education.oracle.com/certification>

Integrated Languages Curriculum



Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE

Integrated Languages Curriculum

The slide lists various modules and courses that are available in the languages curriculum. For most of these modules and courses, there are equivalent CBTs.

Course or Module	Equivalent CBT
<i>SQL1</i>	<i>Oracle SQL: Basic SELECT Statements</i> <i>Oracle SQL: Data Retrieval Techniques</i> <i>Oracle SQL: DML and DDL</i>
<i>Oracle SQL Specifics</i>	<i>Oracle SQL Specifics: Retrieving and Formatting Data</i> <i>Oracle SQL Specifics: Creating and Managing Database Objects</i>
<i>PL/SQL Fundamentals</i>	<i>PL/SQL: Basics</i>
<i>Extended Data Retrieval with SQL</i>	<i>Oracle SQL and SQL*Plus: Advanced SELECT Statements</i> <i>Oracle SQL and SQL*Plus: SQL*Plus and Reporting</i>
<i>Develop PL/SQL Program Units</i>	<i>PL/SQL: Procedures, Functions, and Packages</i> <i>PL/SQL: Database Programming</i>
<i>SQL Statement Tuning</i>	<i>SQL and PL/SQL Tuning: Diagnostics</i> <i>SQL and PL/SQL Tuning: Rules and Guidelines</i>

Four seminars on PL/SQL are also offered: *Advanced Techniques for PL/SQL Developers*, *PL/SQL Best Practices*, *Oracle8: New Features in PL/SQL*, and *Oracle Built-in Packages*.

Instructor Note

Inform participants what their next course should be and give a brief description of the course.

Introduction

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.



Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	90 minutes	Lecture
	90 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **Discuss the theoretical and physical aspects of a relational database**
- **Describe the Oracle implementation of the RDBMS and ORDBMS**
- **Describe new features of Oracle*8i***
- **Describe how SQL and PL/SQL are used in the Oracle product set**
- **Describe the use and benefits of PL/SQL**

I-2

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

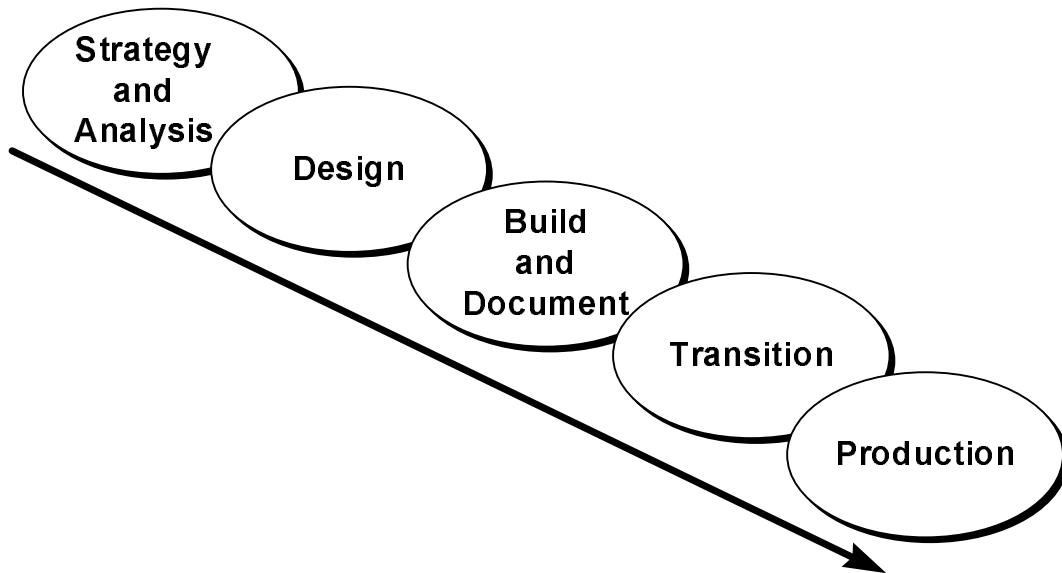
 ORACLE®

Lesson Aim

In this lesson, you will gain an understanding of the relational database management system (RDBMS) and the object relational database management system (ORDBMS). You will also be introduced to the following:

- SQL statements that are specific to Oracle
- SQL*Plus, which is used for executing SQL and for formatting and reporting purposes
- PL/SQL, which is Oracle's procedural language

System Development Life Cycle



I-3

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

System Development Life Cycle

From concept to production, you can develop a database by using the system development life cycle, which contains multiple stages of development. This top-down, systematic approach to database development transforms business information requirements into an operational database.

Strategy and Analysis

- Study and analyze the business requirements. Interview users and managers to identify the information requirements. Incorporate the enterprise and application mission statements as well as any future system specifications.
- Build models of the system. Transfer the business narrative into a graphical representation of business information needs and rules. Confirm and refine the model with the analysts and experts.

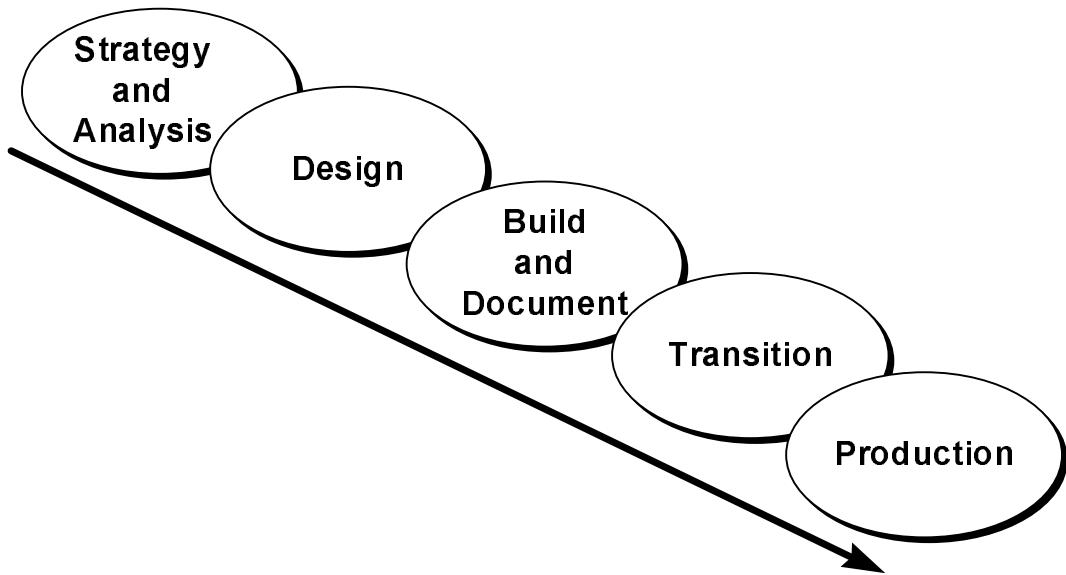
Design

Design the database based on the model developed in the strategy and analysis phase.

Build and Document

- Build the prototype system. Write and execute the commands to create the tables and supporting objects for the database.
- Develop user documentation, help text, and operations manuals to support the use and operation of the system.

System Development Life Cycle



I-4

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

System Development Life Cycle (continued)

Transition

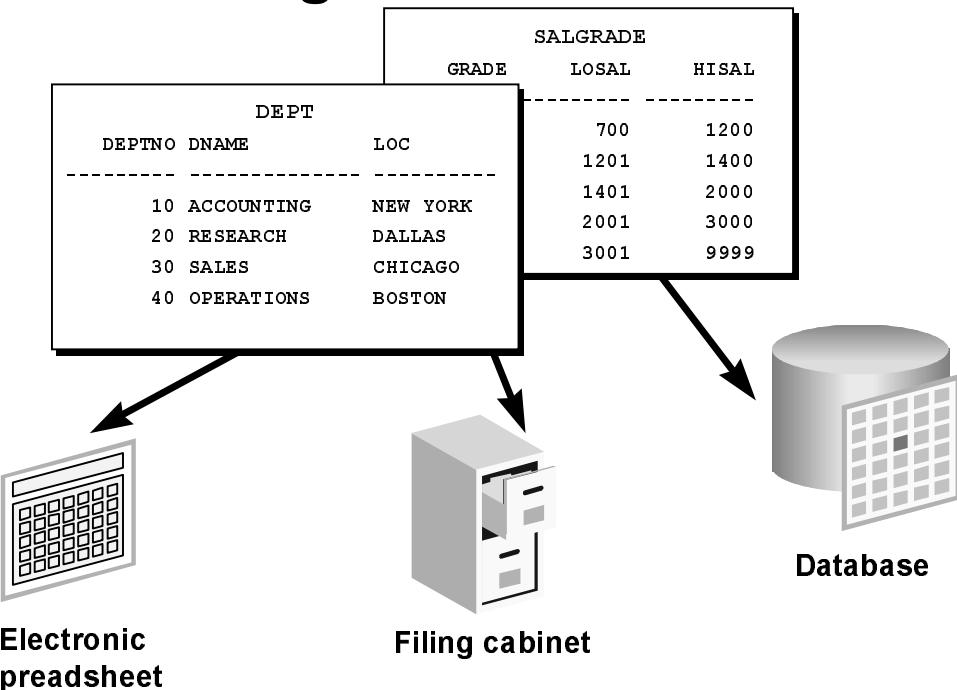
Refine the prototype. Move an application into production with user acceptance testing, conversion of existing data, and parallel operations. Make any modifications required.

Production

Roll out the system to the users. Operate the production system. Monitor its performance, and enhance and refine the system.

Note: The various phases of system development life cycle can be carried out iteratively. This course focuses on the build phase of the system development life cycle.

Data Storage on Different Media



I-5

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Storing Information

Every organization has some information needs. A library keeps a list of members, books, due dates, and fines. A company needs to save information about employees, departments, and salaries. These pieces of information are called *data*.

Organizations can store data on various media and in different formats—for example, a hard-copy document in a filing cabinet or data stored in electronic spreadsheets or in databases.

A *database* is an organized collection of information.

To manage databases, you need database management systems (DBMS). A DBMS is a program that stores, retrieves, and modifies data in the database on request. There are four main types of databases: *hierarchical*, *network*, *relational*, and more recently *object relational*.

Note: Oracle7 is a relational database management system and Oracle8 is an object relational database management system.

Relational Database Concept

- Dr. E.F. Codd proposed the relational model for database systems in 1970.
- It is the basis for the relational database management system (RDBMS).
- The relational model consists of the following:
 - Collection of objects or relations
 - Set of operators to act on the relations
 - Data integrity for accuracy and consistency

I-6

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Relational Model

The principles of the relational model were first outlined by Dr. E.F. Codd in a June 1970 paper called “A Relational Model of Data for Large Shared Data Banks.” In this paper, Dr. Codd proposed the relational model for database systems.

The more popular models used at that time were hierarchical and network, or even simple flat file data structures. Relational database management systems (RDBMS) soon became very popular, especially for their ease of use and flexibility in structure. In addition, a number of innovative vendors, such as Oracle, supplemented the RDBMS with a suite of powerful application development and user products, providing a total solution.

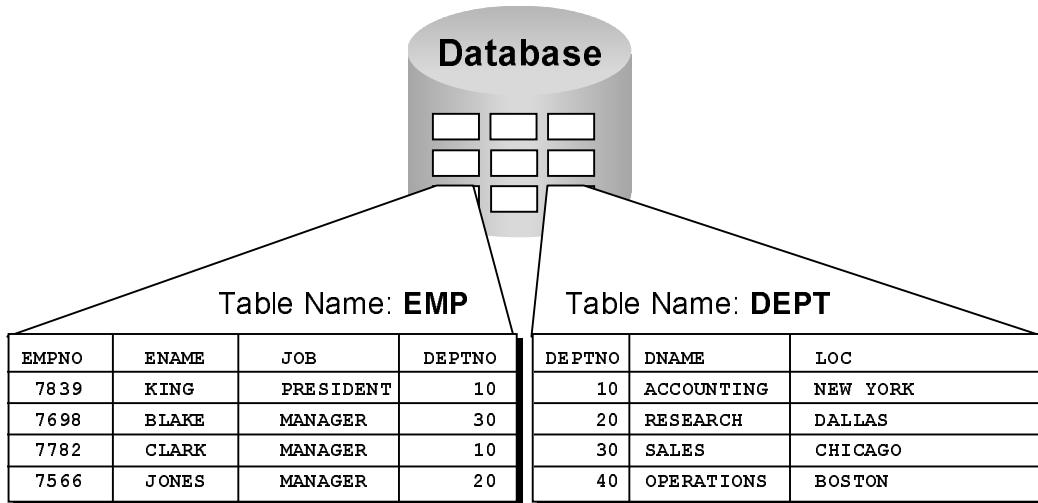
Components of the Relational Model

- Collections of objects or relations that store the data
- A set of operators that can act on the relations to produce other relations
- Data integrity for accuracy and consistency

For more information, see E.F. Codd, *The Relational Model for Database Management Version 2* (Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley, 1990).

Definition of a Relational Database

A relational database is a collection of relations or two-dimensional tables.

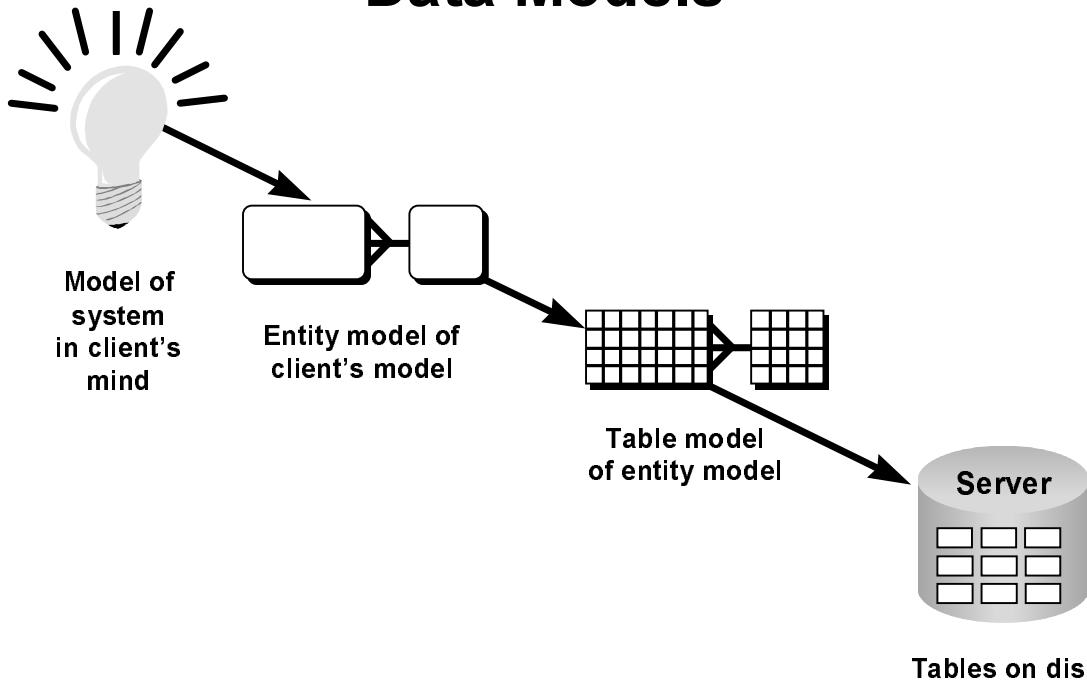


Definition of a Relational Database

A relational database uses relations or two-dimensional tables to store information.

For example, you might want to store information about all the employees in your company. In a relational database, you create several tables to store different pieces of information about your employees, such as an employee table, a department table, and a salary table.

Data Models



I-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Data Models

Models are a cornerstone of design. Engineers build a model of a car to work out any details before putting it into production. In the same manner, system designers develop models to explore ideas and improve the understanding of the database design.

Purpose of Models

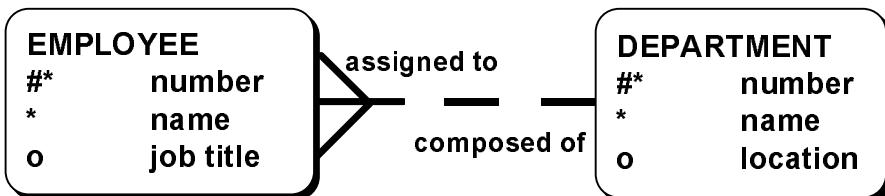
Models help communicate the concepts in people's minds. They can be used to do the following:

- Communicate
- Categorize
- Describe
- Specify
- Investigate
- Evolve
- Analyze
- Imitate

The objective is to produce a model that fits a multitude of these uses, can be understood by an end user, and contains sufficient detail for a developer to build a database system.

Entity Relationship Model

- Create an entity relationship diagram from business specifications or narratives



- Scenario

- “... Assign one or more employees to a department ...”
- “... Some departments do not yet have assigned employees ...”

I-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

ER Modeling

In an effective system, data is divided into discrete categories or entities. An entity relationship (ER) model is an illustration of various entities in a business and the relationships between them. An ER model is derived from business specifications or narratives and built during the analysis phase of the system development life cycle. ER models separate the information required by a business from the activities performed within a business. Although businesses can change their activities, the type of information tends to remain constant. Therefore, the data structures also tend to be constant.

Benefits of ER Modeling

- Documents information for the organization in a clear, precise format
- Provides a clear picture of the scope of the information requirement
- Provides an easily understood pictorial map for the database design
- Offers an effective framework for integrating multiple applications

Key Components

- Entity: A thing of significance about which information needs to be known. Examples are departments, employees, and orders.
- Attribute: Something that describes or qualifies an entity. For example, for the employee entity, the attributes would be the employee number, name, job title, hire date, department number, and so on. Each of the attributes is either required or optional. This state is called *optionality*.
- Relationship: A named association between entities showing optionality and degree. Examples are employees and departments, and orders and items.

Entity Relationship Modeling Conventions

Entity

Soft box

Singular, unique name

Uppercase

Synonym in parentheses

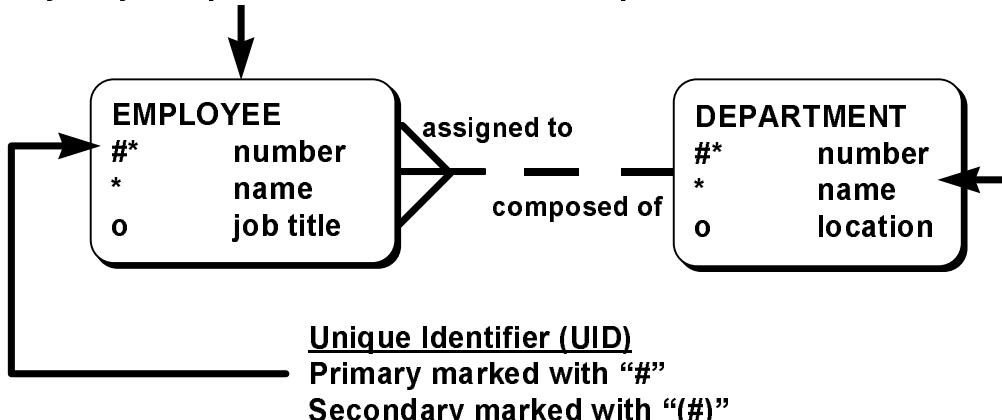
Attribute

Singular name

Lowercase

Mandatory marked with “**”

Optional marked with “o”



I-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Entities

To represent an entity in a model, use the following conventions:

- Soft box with any dimensions
- Singular, unique entity name
- Entity name in uppercase
- Optional synonym names in uppercase within parentheses: ()

Attributes

To represent an attribute in a model, use the following conventions:

- Use singular names in lowercase
- Tag mandatory attributes, or values that must be known, with an asterisk: *
- Tag optional attributes, or values that may be known, with the letter o

Relationships

Symbol	Description
Dashed line	Optional element indicating “may be”
Solid line	Mandatory element indicating “must be”
Crow’s foot	Degree element indicating “one or more”
Single line	Degree element indicating “one and only one”

Entity Relationship Modeling Conventions

Entity

Soft box

Singular, unique name

Uppercase

Synonym in parentheses

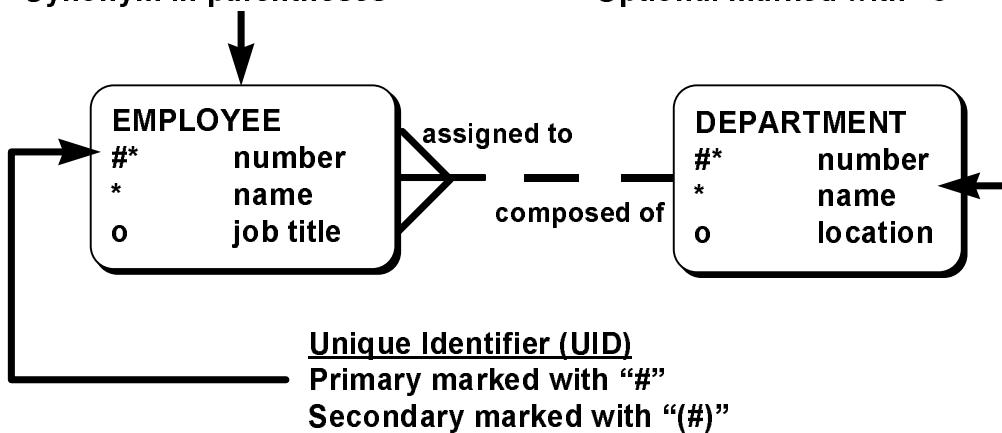
Attribute

Singular name

Lowercase

Mandatory marked with “**”

Optional marked with “o”



I-11

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Relationships

Each direction of the relationship contains:

- A name, for example, *taught by* or *assigned to*
- An optionality, either *must be* or *may be*
- A degree, either *one and only one* or *one or more*

Note: The term *cardinality* is a synonym for the term *degree*.

Each source entity {may be | must be} relationship name {one and only one | one or more} destination entity.

Note: The convention is to read clockwise.

Unique Identifiers

A unique identifier (UID) is any combination of attributes or relationships, or both, that serves to distinguish occurrences of an entity. Each entity occurrence must be uniquely identifiable.

- Tag each attribute that is part of the UID with a number symbol: #
- Tag secondary UIDs with a number sign in parentheses: (#)

Relational Database Terminology

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	MGR	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7839	KING	PRESIDENT	6	17-NOV-81	5000		10
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	7839	01-MAY-81	2850		30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	7839	09-JUN-81	2450		10
7566	JONES	MANAGER	7839	02-APR-81	2975		20
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	7698	28-SEP-81	1250	1400	30
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	7698	20-FEB-81	1600	300	30
7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	7698	08-SEP-81	1500	5	30
7900	JAMES	CLERK	7698	03-DEC-81	950		30
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	7698	22-FEB-81	1250	500	30
7902	FORD	ANALYST	7566	03-DEC-81	3000		20
7369	SMITH	CLERK	7902	17-DEC-80	800		20
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	7566	09-DEC-82	3000		20
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	7788	12-JAN-83	1100		20
7934	MILLER	CLERK	7782	23-JAN-82	1300		10

I-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Terminology Used in a Relational Database

A relational database can contain one or many tables. A *table* is the basic storage structure of an RDBMS. A table holds all the data necessary about something in the real world—for example, employees, invoices, or customers.

The slide shows the contents of the EMP *table* or *relation*. The numbers indicate the following:

1. A single *row* or tuple representing all data required for a particular employee. Each row in a table should be identified by a primary key, which allows no duplicate rows. The order of rows is insignificant; specify the row order when the data is retrieved.
2. A *column* or attribute containing the employee number, which is also the primary key. The employee number identifies a *unique* employee in the EMP table. A primary key must contain a value.
3. A column that is not a key value. A column represents one kind of data in a table; in the example, the job title of all the employees. Column order is insignificant when storing data; specify the column order when the data is retrieved.
4. A column containing the department number, which is also a *foreign key*. A foreign key is a column that defines how tables relate to each other. A foreign key refers to a primary key or a unique key in another table. In the example, DEPTNO *uniquely* identifies a department in the DEPT table.
5. A *field* can be found at the intersection of a row and a column. There can be only one value in it.
6. A field may have no value in it. This is called a null value. In the EMP table, only employees who have a role of salesman have a value in the COMM (commission) field.

Note: Null values are covered further in subsequent lessons.

Relating Multiple Tables

- Each row of data in a table is uniquely identified by a primary key (PK).
- You can logically relate data from multiple tables using foreign keys (FK).

Table Name: **EMP**

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	DEPTNO
7839	KING	PRESIDENT	10
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	10
7566	JONES	MANAGER	20

Primary key

Table Name: **DEPT**

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

Primary key

Foreign key

I-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Relating Multiple Tables

Each table contains data that describes exactly one entity. For example, the EMP table contains information about employees. Categories of data are listed across the top of each table, and individual cases are listed below. Using a table format, you can readily visualize, understand, and use information.

Because data about different entities is stored in different tables, you may need to combine two or more tables to answer a particular question. For example, you may want to know the location of the department where an employee works. In this scenario, you need information from the EMP table (which contains data about employees) and the DEPT table (which contains information about departments). An RDBMS enables you to relate the data in one table to the data in another by using the foreign keys. A foreign key is a column or a set of columns that refer to a primary key in the same table or another table.

The ability to relate data in one table to data in another enables you to organize information in separate, manageable units. Employee data can be kept logically distinct from department data by storing it in a separate table.

Guidelines for Primary Keys and Foreign Keys

- No duplicate values are allowed in a primary key.
- Primary keys generally cannot be changed.
- Foreign keys are based on data values and are purely logical, not physical, pointers.
- A foreign key value must match an existing primary key value or unique key value, or else be null.
- You cannot define foreign keys without existing primary (unique) keys.

Relational Database Properties

A relational database

- Can be accessed and modified by executing structured query language (SQL) statements**
- Contains a collection of tables with no physical pointers**
- Uses a set of operators**

I-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

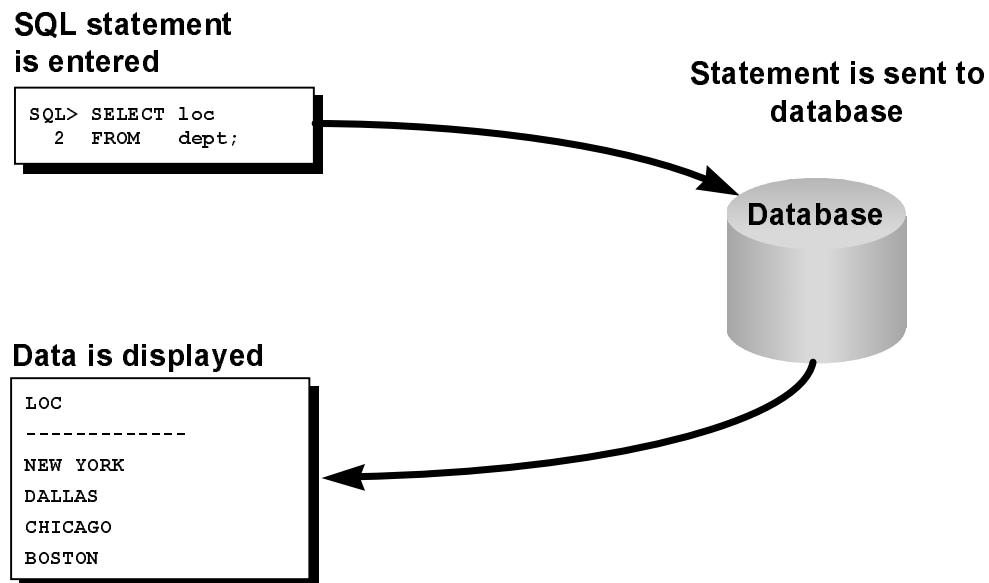
ORACLE®

Properties of a Relational Database

In a relational database, you do not specify the access route to the tables, and you do not need to know how the data is arranged physically.

To access the database, you execute a structured query language (SQL) statement, which is the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standard language for operating upon relational databases. The language contains a large set of operators for partitioning and combining relations. The database can be modified by using the SQL statements.

Communicating with a RDBMS Using SQL



I-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

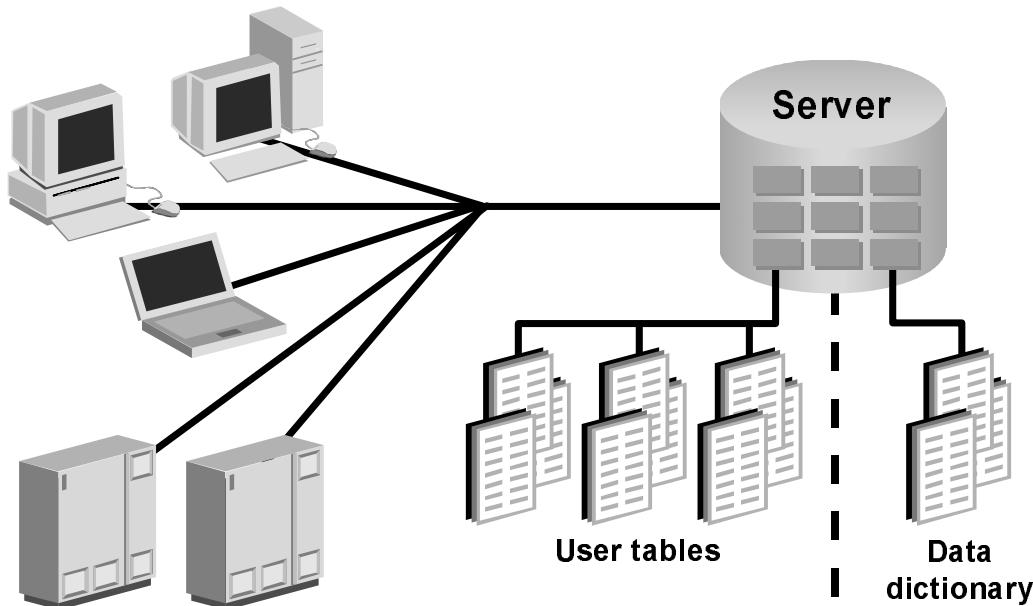
ORACLE®

Structured Query Language

SQL allows you to communicate with the server and has the following advantages:

- Efficient
- Easy to learn and use
- Functionally complete (SQL allows you to define, retrieve, and manipulate data in the tables.)

Relational Database Management System



I-16

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Relational Database Management System

Oracle provides a flexible RDBMS called Oracle7. Using its features, you can store and manage data with all the advantages of a relational structure plus PL/SQL, an engine that provides you with the ability to store and execute program units. The server offers the options of retrieving data based on optimization techniques. It includes security features that control how a database is accessed and used. Other features include consistency and protection of data through locking mechanisms.

Oracle applications may run on the same computer as the Oracle Server. Alternatively, you can run applications on a system local to the user and run the Oracle Server on another system (client-server architecture). In this client-server environment, a wide range of computing resources can be used. For example, a form-based airline reservation application can run on a client personal computer while accessing flight data that is conveniently managed by an Oracle Server on a central computer.

For more information, see *Oracle Server Concepts Manual*, Release 8.

Oracle8: Object Relational Database Management System

- **User-defined datatypes and objects**
- **Fully compatible with relational database**
- **Support of multimedia and large objects**
- **High-quality database server features**

About Oracle8

Oracle8 is the first object-capable database developed by Oracle. It extends the data modeling capabilities of Oracle7 to support a new object relational database model. Oracle8 provides a new engine that brings object-oriented programming, complex datatypes, complex business objects, and full compatibility with the relational world.

Oracle8 extends Oracle7 in many ways. It includes several features for improved performance and functionality of online transaction processing (OLTP) applications, such as better sharing of runtime data structures, larger buffer caches, and deferrable constraints. Data warehouse applications will benefit from enhancements such as parallel execution of insert, update, and delete operations; partitioning; and parallel-aware query optimization. Operating within the Network Computing Architecture (NCA) framework, Oracle8 supports client-server and Web-based applications that are distributed and multitiered.

Oracle8 can scale tens of thousands of concurrent users, support up to 512 petabytes, and can handle any type of data, including text, spatial, image, sound, video, and time series as well as traditional structured data.

For more information, see *Oracle Server Concepts Manual*, Release 8.

Oracle8i: Internet Platform Database for Internet Computing Features

- Advanced tools to manage all types of data on Web sites**
- More than a simple relational data store: iFS**
- Integrated Java VM in the server: JServer**
- Better performance, stronger security, language improvement**
- Greater integration with Windows NT environment: AppWizard**

I-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

About Oracle8i

Oracle8i, the database for Internet computing, provides advanced tools to manage all types of data in Web sites.

It is much more than a simple relational data store. The Internet File System (*iFS*) combines the power of Oracle8i with the ease of use of a file system. It allows users to move all of their data into the Oracle8i database, where it can be stored and managed more efficiently. End users can easily access files and folders in Oracle *iFS* via a variety of protocols, such as HTML, FTP, and IMAP4, giving them universal access to their data.

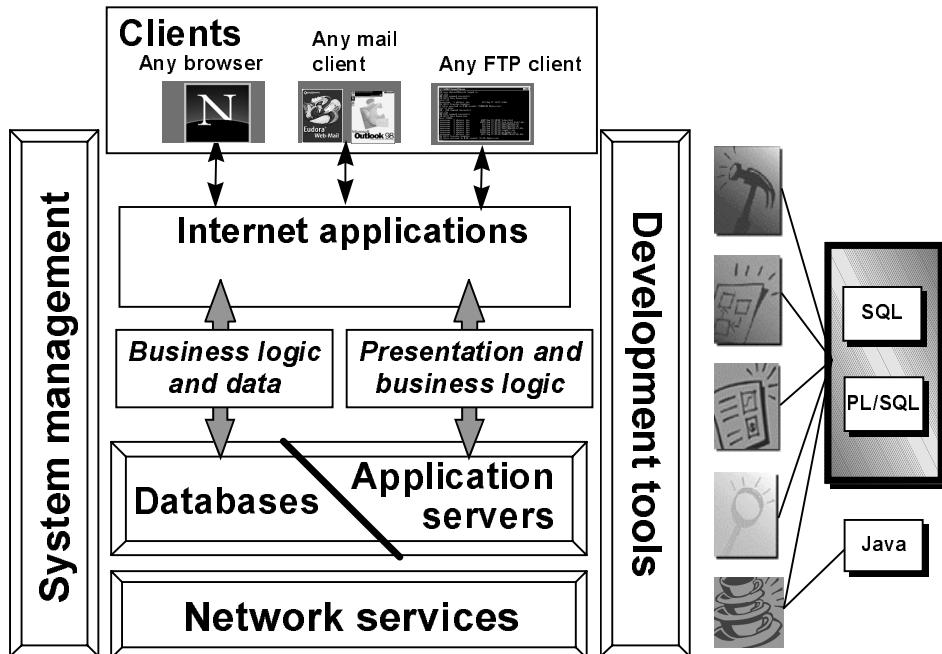
Oracle8i *interMedia* allows users to web-enable their multi-media data—including image, text, audio, and video data. Oracle8i includes a robust, integrated, and scalable Java Virtual Machine within the server (Jserver), thus supporting Java in all tiers of applications. This eliminates the necessity of recompiling or modifying Java code when it is to be deployed on a different tier.

With the newly introduced resource management, the DBA can choose the best method to fit an application's profile and workload. The extended features of parallel server and networking improves ease of system administration. The extended functionality of advanced replication results in better performance and improved security. Significant new functionalities have been added to languages.

Oracle8i provides full, native integration with Microsoft Transaction Server (MTS) in the Windows NT environment. Application development is simplified by the Oracle Application Wizard (AppWizard) for Visual Studio, which provides developers with a GUI tool for creating a Visual C++, Visual Interdev, or Visual Basic applications accessing data in an Oracle database.

For more information, see *Oracle Server Concepts Manual*, Release 8*i*.

Oracle Internet Platform



I-19

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Oracle Internet Platform

Oracle offers a comprehensive high-performance Internet platform for e-commerce and data warehousing. This integrated platform includes everything needed to develop, deploy, and manage Internet applications. The Oracle Internet Platform is built on three core pieces:

- Browser-based clients to process presentation
- Application servers to execute business logic and serve presentation logic to browser-based clients
- Databases to execute database-intensive business logic and serve data

Oracle offers a wide variety of the most advanced graphical user interface (GUI) driven development tools to build business applications, as well as a large suite of software applications for many areas of business and industry. Stored procedures, functions, and packages can be written by using SQL, PL/SQL, or Java.

Instructor Note

Please read Instructor Note on page I-25.

SQL Statements

SELECT	Data retrieval
INSERT UPDATE DELETE	Data manipulation language (DML)
CREATE ALTER DROP RENAME TRUNCATE	Data definition language (DDL)
COMMIT ROLLBACK SAVEPOINT	Transaction control
GRANT REVOKE	Data control language (DCL)

I-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SQL Statements

Oracle SQL complies with industry-accepted standards. Oracle Corporation ensures future compliance with evolving standards by actively involving key personnel in SQL standards committees. Industry-accepted committees are the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and the International Standards Organization (ISO). Both ANSI and ISO have accepted SQL as the standard language for relational databases.

Statement	Description
SELECT	Retrieves data from the database
INSERT UPDATE DELETE	Enters new rows, changes existing rows, and removes unwanted rows from tables in the database, respectively. Collectively known as <i>data manipulation language</i> (DML).
CREATE ALTER DROP RENAME TRUNCATE	Sets up, changes, and removes data structures from tables. Collectively known as <i>data definition language</i> (DDL).
COMMIT ROLLBACK SAVEPOINT	Manages the changes made by DML statements. Changes to the data can be grouped together into logical transactions.
GRANT REVOKE	Gives or removes access rights to both the Oracle database and the structures within it. Collectively known as <i>data control language</i> (DCL).

About PL/SQL

- **PL/SQL is an extension to SQL with design features of programming languages.**
- **Data manipulation and query statements of SQL are included within procedural units of code.**

I-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

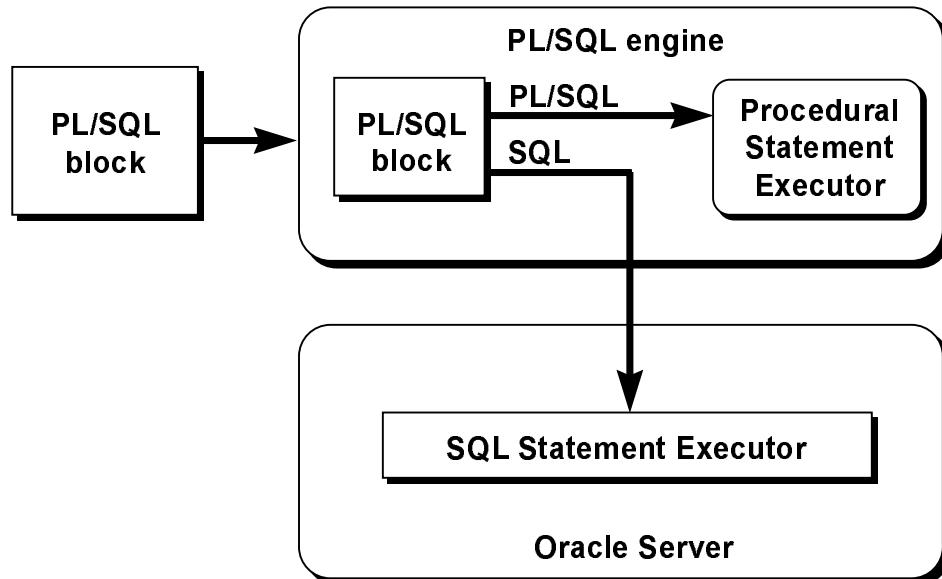
ORACLE®

About PL/SQL

Procedural Language/SQL (PL/SQL) is Oracle Corporation's procedural language extension to SQL, the standard data access language for relational databases. PL/SQL offers modern software engineering features such as data encapsulation, exception handling, information hiding, and object orientation, and so brings state-of-the-art programming to the Oracle Server and Toolset.

PL/SQL incorporates many of the advanced features made in programming languages designed during the 1970s and 1980s. It allows the data manipulation and query statements of SQL to be included in block-structured and procedural units of code, making PL/SQL a powerful transaction processing language. With PL/SQL, you can use SQL statements to finesse Oracle data and PL/SQL control statements to process the data.

PL/SQL Environment



I-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

PL/SQL Engine and the Oracle Server

PL/SQL is not an Oracle product in its own right; it is a technology employed by the Oracle Server and by certain Oracle tools. Blocks of PL/SQL are passed to and processed by a PL/SQL engine, which may reside within the tool or within the Oracle Server. The engine used depends on where the PL/SQL is being invoked.

When you submit PL/SQL blocks from a Pro* program, user-exit, SQL*Plus, or Server Manager, the PL/SQL engine in the Oracle Server processes them. It separates out the SQL statements and sends them individually to the SQL statements executor.

A single transfer is required to send the block from the application to the Oracle Server, thus improving performance, especially in a client-server network. PL/SQL code can also be stored in the Oracle Server as subprograms that can be referenced by any number of applications connected to the database.

Instructor Note

For more information on the PL/SQL engine, refer to:

PL/SQL User's Guide and Reference, Release 8.1.5, "Architecture"

http://st-doc.us.oracle.com/8.0/815/server.815/a67842/01_overview.htm#962

Tables Used in the Course

EMP

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	MGR	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7839	KING	PRESIDENT		17-NOV-81	5000		10
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	7839	01-MAY-81	2850		30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	7839	09-JUN-81	2450		10
7566	JONES	MANAGER	7839	02-APR-81	2975		20
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	7698	28-SEP-81	1250	1400	30
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	7698	20-FEB-81	1600	300	30
7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	7698	08-SEP-81	1500	0	30
7900	JAMES	CLERK	7698	03-DEC-81	950		30
DEPTNO		LOC		7698 22-FEB-81	1250	500	30
				7566 03-DEC-81	3000		20
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK		7902 17-DEC-80			
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS		7566 09-DEC-82			
30	SALES	CHICAGO		7788 12-JAN-83			
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON		7782 23-JAN-82			

DEPT

GRADE	LOSAL	HISAL
1	700	1200
2	1201	1400
3	1401	2000
4	2001	3000
5	3001	9999

SALGRADE

ORACLE®

I-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

Tables Used in the Course

The following three tables will be used in this course:

- EMP table, which gives details of all the employees
- DEPT table, which gives details of all the departments
- SALGRADE table, which gives details of salaries for various grades

The structure and data for all the tables is given in Appendix B.

Summary

- **Relational databases are composed of relations, managed by relational operations, and governed by data integrity constraints.**
- **The Oracle Server allows you to store and manage information by using the SQL language and PL/SQL engine.**
- **Oracle8 is based on the object relational database management system.**
- **The Oracle8i Server is the database for Internet computing.**
- **PL/SQL is an extension to SQL with design features of programming languages.**

I-24

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Summary

Relational database management systems are composed of objects or relations. They are managed by operations and governed by data integrity constraints.

Oracle Corporation produces products and services to meet your relational database management system needs. The main product is the Oracle Server, which enables you to store and manage information by using SQL and the PL/SQL engine for procedural constructs.

SQL

The Oracle Server supports ANSI standard SQL and contains extensions. SQL is the language used to communicate with the server to access, manipulate, and control data.

PL/SQL

The PL/SQL language extends the SQL language by offering block-structured procedural constructs combined with SQL nonprocedural capabilities.

Instructor Note (for page I-19)

System management tools such as Oracle Enterprise Manager greatly enhance your ability to control resource usage, enable better recoverability and availability in the database, and make your database much easier to manage. Application Server is a platform for developing and deploying enterprise applications in a secure, reliable, manageable, scalable environment. You can put your application logic in the middle tier, so that you can develop and deploy applications that do not assume any special type of client capability. The client can use a variety of protocols, such as HTML, FTP, and IMAP4, giving them universal access to their data. The main function of Net8, the foundation of Oracle's family of networks, is to establish network sessions and transfer data between a client machine and a server or between two servers.

Development tools such as Oracle Developer, Designer, Reports, Discoverer, and JDeveloper simplify application development using SQL, PL/SQL, or Java.

1

Writing Basic SQL Statements

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	40 minutes	Lecture
	25 minutes	Practice
	65 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **List the capabilities of SQL SELECT statements**
- **Execute a basic SELECT statement**
- **Differentiate between SQL statements and SQL*Plus commands**

Lesson Aim

To extract data from the database, you need to use the structured query language (SQL) SELECT statement. You may need to restrict the columns that are displayed. This lesson describes all the SQL statements that you need to perform these actions.

You may want to create SELECT statements that can be used time and time again. This lesson also covers the use of SQL*Plus commands to execute SQL statements.

Capabilities of SQL SELECT Statements

Selection

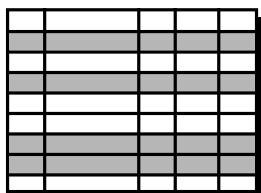


Table 1

Projection

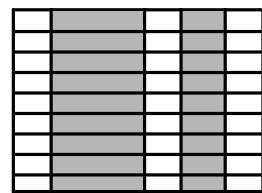


Table 1

Join

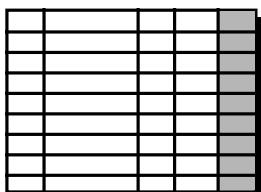


Table 1

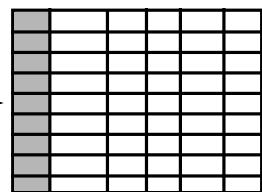


Table 2

1-3

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Capabilities of SQL SELECT Statements

A SELECT statement retrieves information from the database. Using a SELECT statement, you can do the following:

- Selection: You can use the selection capability in SQL to choose the rows in a table that you want returned by a query. You can use various criteria to selectively restrict the rows that you see.
- Projection: You can use the projection capability in SQL to choose the columns in a table that you want returned by your query. You can choose as few or as many columns of the table as you require.
- Join: You can use the join capability in SQL to bring together data that is stored in different tables by creating a link between them. You will learn more about joins in a later lesson.

Instructor Note

Inform students that selection and projection are often considered horizontal and vertical partitioning.

Basic SELECT Statement

```
SELECT      [DISTINCT] {*, column [alias],...}
FROM        table;
```

- **SELECT identifies what columns.**
- **FROM identifies which table.**

Basic SELECT Statement

In its simplest form, a SELECT statement must include the following:

- A SELECT clause, which specifies the columns to be displayed
- A FROM clause, which specifies the table containing the columns listed in the SELECT clause

In the syntax:

SELECT	is a list of one or more columns.
DISTINCT	suppresses duplicates.
*	selects all columns.
column	selects the named column.
alias	gives selected columns different headings.
FROM table	specifies the table containing the columns.

Note: Throughout this course, the words keyword, clause, and statement are used.

- A *keyword* refers to an individual SQL element.
For example, SELECT and FROM are keywords.
- A *clause* is a part of a SQL statement.
For example, SELECT empno, ename, ... is a clause.
- A *statement* is a combination of two or more clauses.
For example, SELECT * FROM emp is a SQL statement.

Writing SQL Statements

- **SQL statements are not case sensitive.**
- **SQL statements can be on one or more lines.**
- **Keywords cannot be abbreviated or split across lines.**
- **Clauses are usually placed on separate lines.**
- **Tabs and indents are used to enhance readability.**

1-5

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Writing SQL Statements

Using the following simple rules and guidelines, you can construct valid statements that are both easy to read and easy to edit:

- SQL statements are not case sensitive, unless indicated.
- SQL statements can be entered on one or many lines.
- Keywords cannot be split across lines or abbreviated.
- Clauses are usually placed on separate lines for readability and ease of editing.
- Tabs and indents can be used to make code more readable.
- Keywords typically are entered in uppercase; all other words, such as table names and columns, are entered in lowercase.
- Within SQL*Plus, a SQL statement is entered at the SQL prompt, and the subsequent lines are numbered. This is called the *SQL buffer*. Only one statement can be current at any time within the buffer.

Executing SQL Statements

- Place a semicolon (;) at the end of the last clause.
- Place a slash on the last line in the buffer.
- Place a slash at the SQL prompt.
- Issue a SQL*Plus RUN command at the SQL prompt.

Selecting All Columns

```
SQL> SELECT *
  2  FROM    dept;
```

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

1-6

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Selecting All Columns, All Rows

You can display all columns of data in a table by following the SELECT keyword with an asterisk (*). In the example on the slide, the department table contains three columns: DEPTNO, DNAME, and LOC. The table contains four rows, one for each department.

You can also display all columns in the table by listing all the columns after the SELECT keyword. For example, the following SQL statement, like the example on the slide, displays all columns and all rows of the DEPT table:

```
SQL> SELECT deptno, dname, loc
  2  FROM    dept;
```

Instructor Note

Let the students know that details of all the tables are given in Appendix B.

Selecting Specific Columns

```
SQL> SELECT deptno, loc  
2   FROM dept;
```

DEPTNO	LOC
10	NEW YORK
20	DALLAS
30	CHICAGO
40	BOSTON

1-7

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Selecting Specific Columns, All Rows

You can use the SELECT statement to display specific columns of the table by specifying the column names, separated by commas. The example on the slide displays all the department numbers and locations from the DEPT table.

In the SELECT clause, specify the columns that you want to see, in the order in which you want them to appear in the output. For example, to display location before department number, you use the following statement:

```
SQL> SELECT loc, deptno  
2   FROM dept;
```

LOC	DEPTNO
NEW YORK	10
DALLAS	20
CHICAGO	30
BOSTON	40

Instructor Note

You can also select from pseudocolumns. A pseudocolumn behaves like a table column but is not actually stored in the table. You cannot insert or delete values of the pseudocolumns. The available pseudocolumns are CURRVAL, NEXTVAL, LEVEL, ROWID, and ROWNUM.

Column Heading Defaults

- Default justification
 - Left: Date and character data
 - Right: Numeric data
- Default display: Uppercase

1-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Column Heading Defaults

Character column heading and data as well as date column heading and data are left-justified within a column width. Number headings and data are right-justified.

```
SQL> SELECT ename, hiredate, sal
  2  FROM emp;

ENAME        HIREDATE          SAL
-----  -----
KING         17-NOV-81       5000
BLAKE        01-MAY-81       2850
CLARK        09-JUN-81       2450
JONES        02-APR-81       2975
MARTIN       28-SEP-81       1250
ALLEN        20-FEB-81       1600
...
14 rows selected.
```

Character and date column headings can be truncated, but number headings cannot be truncated. The column headings appear in uppercase by default. You can override the column heading display with an alias. Column aliases are covered later in this lesson.

Arithmetic Expressions

Create expressions on NUMBER and DATE data by using arithmetic operators.

Operator	Description
+	Add
-	Subtract
*	Multiply
/	Divide

Arithmetic Expressions

You may need to modify the way in which data is displayed, perform calculations, or look at what-if scenarios. This is possible using arithmetic expressions. An arithmetic expression may contain column names, constant numeric values, and the arithmetic operators.

Arithmetic Operators

The slide lists the arithmetic operators available in SQL. You can use arithmetic operators in any clause of a SQL statement except the FROM clause.

Instructor Note

You can use only the addition and subtraction operators with DATE datatypes.

Using Arithmetic Operators

```
SQL> SELECT ename, sal, sal+300  
2  FROM emp;
```

ENAME	SAL	SAL+300
KING	5000	5300
BLAKE	2850	3150
CLARK	2450	2750
JONES	2975	3275
MARTIN	1250	1550
ALLEN	1600	1900
...		
14 rows selected.		

Using Arithmetic Operators

The example in the slide uses the addition operator to calculate a salary increase of \$300 for all employees and displays a new SAL+300 column in the output.

Note that the resultant calculated column SAL+300 is not a new column in the EMP table; it is for display only. By default, the name of a new column comes from the calculation that generated it—in this case, sal+300.

Note: SQL*Plus ignores blank spaces before and after the arithmetic operator.

Operator Precedence

* / + -

- Multiplication and division take priority over addition and subtraction.
- Operators of the same priority are evaluated from left to right.
- Parentheses are used to force prioritized evaluation and to clarify statements.

1-11

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Operator Precedence

If an arithmetic expression contains more than one operator, multiplication and division are evaluated first. If operators within an expression are of same priority, then evaluation is done from left to right.

You can use parentheses to force the expression within parentheses to be evaluated first.

Operator Precedence

```
SQL> SELECT ename, sal, 12*sal+100  
2  FROM emp;
```

ENAME	SAL	12*SAL+100
KING	5000	60100
BLAKE	2850	34300
CLARK	2450	29500
JONES	2975	35800
MARTIN	1250	15100
ALLEN	1600	19300
...		
14 rows selected.		

1-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Operator Precedence (continued)

The example on the slide displays the name, salary, and annual compensation of employees. It calculates the annual compensation as 12 multiplied by the monthly salary, plus a one-time bonus of \$100. Notice that multiplication is performed before addition.

Note: Use parentheses to reinforce the standard order of precedence and to improve clarity. For example, the expression above can be written as $(12*sal)+100$ with no change in the result.

Instructor Note

Demo: 11prec1.sql, 11prec2.sql

Purpose: To illustrate viewing a query containing no parentheses and executing a query with parentheses to override rules of precedence.

Using Parentheses

```
SQL> SELECT ename, sal, 12*(sal+100)
2  FROM emp;
```

ENAME	SAL	12*(SAL+100)
KING	5000	61200
BLAKE	2850	35400
CLARK	2450	30600
JONES	2975	36900
MARTIN	1250	16200
...		
14 rows selected.		

1-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using Parentheses

You can override the rules of precedence by using *parentheses* to specify the order in which operators are executed.

The example on the slide displays the name, salary, and annual compensation of employees. It calculates the annual compensation as monthly salary plus a monthly bonus of \$100, multiplied by 12. Because of the parentheses, addition takes priority over multiplication.

Defining a Null Value

- A null is a value that is unavailable, unassigned, unknown, or inapplicable.
- A null is not the same as zero or a blank space.

```
SQL> SELECT ename, job, sal, comm  
2  FROM emp;
```

ENAME	JOB	SAL	COMM
KING	PRESIDENT	5000	
BLAKE	MANAGER	2850	
...			
TURNER	SALESMAN	1500	0
...			
14 rows selected.			

1-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Null Values

If a row lacks the data value for a particular column, that value is said to be *null*, or to contain null.

A null value is a value that is unavailable, unassigned, unknown, or inapplicable. A null value is not the same as zero or a space. Zero is a number, and a space is a character.

Columns of any datatype can contain null values, unless the column was defined as NOT NULL or as PRIMARY KEY when the column was created.

In the COMM column in the EMP table, you notice that only a SALESMAN can earn commission. Other employees are not entitled to earn commission. A null value represents that fact. Turner, who is a salesman, does not earn any commission. Notice that his commission is zero and not null.

Instructor Note

Demo: l1null.sql

Purpose: To illustrate calculating with null values.

Null Values in Arithmetic Expressions

Arithmetic expressions containing a null value evaluate to null.

```
SQL> select ename, 12*sal+comm
  2  from emp
  3 WHERE ename='KING';
```

ENAME	12*SAL+COMM
KING	-----

1-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Null Values (continued)

If any column value in an arithmetic expression is null, the result is null. For example, if you attempt to perform division with zero, you get an error. However, if you divide a number by null, the result is a null or unknown.

In the example on the slide, employee KING is not in SALESMAN and does not get any commission. Because the COMM column in the arithmetic expression is null, the result is null.

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “Elements of SQL.”

Defining a Column Alias

- Renames a column heading
- Is useful with calculations
- Immediately follows column name; optional AS keyword between column name and alias
- Requires double quotation marks if it contains spaces or special characters or is case sensitive

1-16

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Column Aliases

When displaying the result of a query, SQL*Plus normally uses the name of the selected column as the column heading. In many cases, this heading may not be descriptive and hence is difficult to understand. You can change a column heading by using a column alias.

Specify the alias after the column in the SELECT list using a space as a separator. By default, alias headings appear in uppercase. If the alias contains spaces, special characters (such as # or \$), or is case sensitive, enclose the alias in double quotation marks ("").

Instructor Note

Within a SQL statement, a column alias can be used in both the SELECT clause and the ORDER BY clause. You cannot use column aliases in the WHERE clause. Both alias features comply with the ANSI SQL 92 standard.

Demo: 11alias.sql

Purpose: To illustrate the use of aliases in expressions.

Using Column Aliases

```
SQL> SELECT ename AS name, sal salary  
2  FROM emp;
```

NAME	SALARY
...	

```
SQL> SELECT ename "Name",  
2          sal*12 "Annual Salary"  
3  FROM emp;
```

Name	Annual Salary
...	

1-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Column Aliases (continued)

The first example displays the name and the monthly salary of all the employees. Notice that the optional AS keyword has been used before the column alias name. The result of the query would be the same whether the AS keyword is used or not. Also notice that the SQL statement has the column aliases, name and salary, in lowercase, whereas the result of the query displays the column headings in uppercase. As mentioned in the last slide, column headings appear in uppercase by default.

The second example displays the name and annual salary of all the employees. Because Annual Salary contains spaces, it has been enclosed in double quotation marks. Notice that the column heading in the output is exactly the same as the column alias.

Instructor Note

Point out the optional AS keyword in the first example and the double quotation marks in the second example. Also show that the aliases always appear in uppercase, unless enclosed within double quotation marks.

Concatenation Operator

- Concatenates columns or character strings to other columns
- Is represented by two vertical bars (||)
- Creates a resultant column that is a character expression

1-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Concatenation Operator

You can link columns to other columns, arithmetic expressions, or constant values to create a character expression by using the concatenation operator (||). Columns on either side of the operator are combined to make a single output column.

Using the Concatenation Operator

```
SQL> SELECT ename||job AS "Employees"  
2  FROM emp;
```

```
Employees  
-----  
KINGPRESIDENT  
BLAKEMANAGER  
CLARKMANAGER  
JONESMANAGER  
MARTINSALESMAN  
ALLEN SALESMAN  
...  
14 rows selected.
```

1-19

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Concatenation Operator (continued)

In the example, ENAME and JOB are concatenated, and they are given the alias Employees. Notice that the employee number and job are combined to make a single output column.

The AS keyword before the alias name makes the SELECT clause easier to read.

Literal Character Strings

- A literal is a character, a number, or a date included in the SELECT list.
- Date and character literal values must be enclosed within single quotation marks.
- Each character string is output once for each row returned.

1-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Literal Character Strings

A literal is character, a number, or a date included in the SELECT list that is not a column name or a column alias. It is printed for each row returned. Literal strings of free-format text can be included in the query result and are treated the same as a column in the SELECT list.

Date and character literals *must* be enclosed within single quotation marks (' '); number literals must not.

Using Literal Character Strings

```
SQL> SELECT ename || ' is a ' || job
  2          AS "Employee Details"
  3  FROM    emp;
```

```
Employee Details
-----
KING is a PRESIDENT
BLAKE is a MANAGER
CLARK is a MANAGER
JONES is a MANAGER
MARTIN is a SALESMAN
...
14 rows selected.
```

1-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Literal Character Strings (continued)

The example on the slide displays names and jobs of all employees. The column has the heading Employee Details. Notice the spaces between the single quotation marks in the SELECT statement. The spaces improve the readability of the output.

In the following example, the name and salary for each employee is concatenated with a literal to give the returned rows more meaning.

```
SQL> SELECT ename || ': ' || '1' || ' Month salary = ' || sal Monthly
  2  FROM    emp;
```

```
MONTHLY
-----
KING: 1 Month salary = 5000
BLAKE: 1 Month salary = 2850
CLARK: 1 Month salary = 2450
JONES: 1 Month salary = 2975
MARTIN: 1 Month salary = 1250
ALLEN: 1 Month salary = 1600
TURNER: 1 Month salary = 1500
...
14 rows selected.
```

Duplicate Rows

The default display of queries is all rows, including duplicate rows.

```
SQL> SELECT deptno  
2   FROM emp;
```

DEPTNO

10
30
10
20
...

14 rows selected.

1-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Duplicate Rows

Unless you indicate otherwise, SQL*Plus displays the results of a query without eliminating duplicate rows. The example on the slide displays all the department numbers from the EMP table. Notice that the department numbers are repeated.

Eliminating Duplicate Rows

Eliminate duplicate rows by using the DISTINCT keyword in the SELECT clause.

```
SQL> SELECT DISTINCT deptno  
2   FROM emp;
```

DEPTNO

10
20
30

1-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Duplicate Rows (continued)

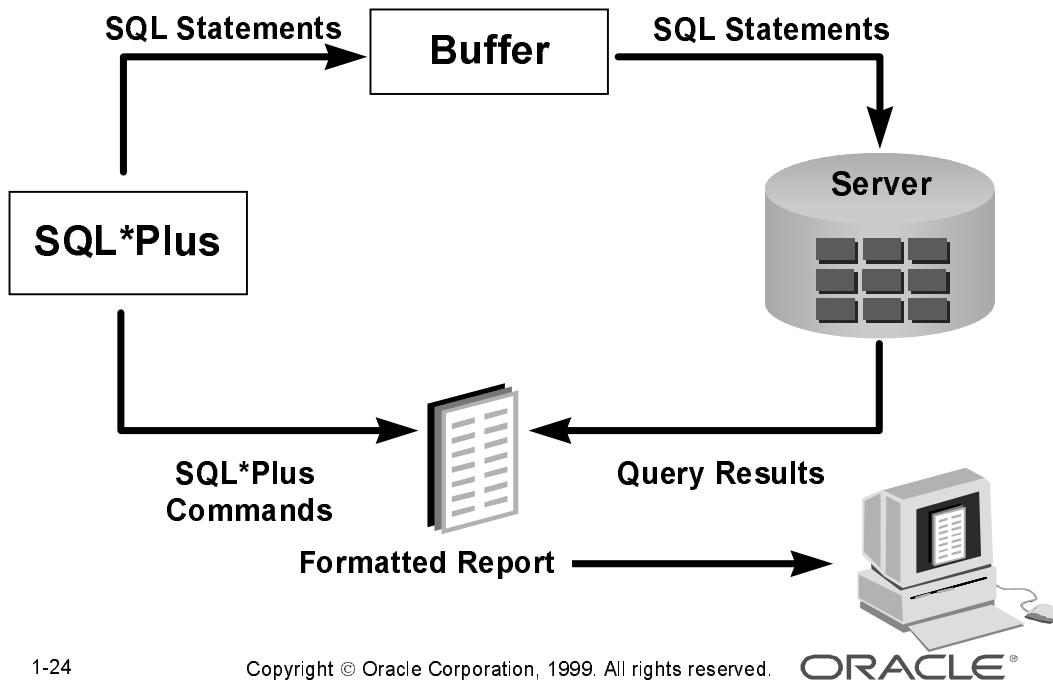
To eliminate duplicate rows in the result, include the DISTINCT keyword in the SELECT clause immediately after the SELECT keyword. In the example on the slide, the EMP table actually contains fourteen rows but there are only three unique department numbers in the table.

You can specify multiple columns after the DISTINCT qualifier. The DISTINCT qualifier affects all the selected columns, and the result represents a distinct combination of the columns.

```
SQL> SELECT DISTINCT deptno, job  
2   FROM emp;
```

DEPTNO	JOB
-----	-----
10	CLERK
10	MANAGER
10	PRESIDENT
20	ANALYST
...	
9 rows selected.	

SQL and SQL*Plus Interaction



SQL and SQL*Plus

SQL is a command language for communication with the Oracle Server from any tool or application. Oracle SQL contains many extensions. When you enter a SQL statement, it is stored in a part of memory called the *SQL buffer* and remains there until you enter a new statement.

*SQL*Plus* is an Oracle tool that recognizes and submits SQL statements to the Oracle Server for execution and contains its own command language.

Features of SQL

- Can be used by a range of users, including those with little or no programming experience
- Is a nonprocedural language
- Reduces the amount of time required for creating and maintaining systems
- Is an English-like language

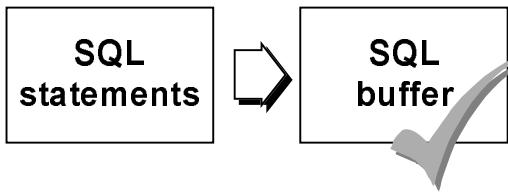
Features of SQL*Plus

- Accepts ad hoc entry of statements
- Accepts SQL input from files
- Provides a line editor for modifying SQL statements
- Controls environmental settings
- Formats query results into a basic report
- Accesses local and remote databases

SQL Statements Versus SQL*Plus Commands

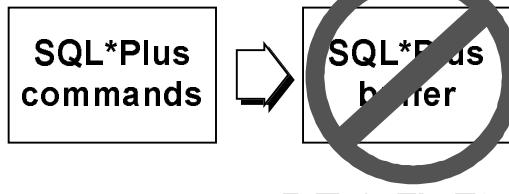
SQL

- A language
- ANSI standard
- Keyword cannot be abbreviated
- Statements manipulate data and table definitions in the database



SQL*Plus

- An environment
- Oracle proprietary
- Keywords can be abbreviated
- Commands do not allow manipulation of values in the database



1-25

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SQL and SQL*Plus (continued)

The following table compares SQL and SQL*Plus:

SQL	SQL*Plus
Is a language for communicating with the Oracle Server to access data	Recognizes SQL statements and sends them to the Server
Is based on American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standard SQL	Is the Oracle proprietary interface for executing SQL statements
Manipulates data and table definitions in the database	Does not allow manipulation of values in the database
Is entered into the SQL buffer on one or more lines	Is entered one line at a time; not stored in the SQL buffer
Does not have a continuation character	Has a dash (-) as a continuation character if the command is longer than one line
Cannot be abbreviated	Can be abbreviated
Uses a termination character to execute command immediately	Does not require termination characters; commands are executed immediately
Uses functions to perform some formatting	Uses commands to format data

Overview of SQL*Plus

- Log in to SQL*Plus.
- Describe the table structure.
- Edit your SQL statement.
- Execute SQL from SQL*Plus.
- Save SQL statements to files and append SQL statements to files.
- Execute saved files.
- Load commands from file to buffer to edit.

1-26

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SQL*Plus

SQL*Plus is an environment in which you can do the following:

- Execute SQL statements to retrieve, modify, add, and remove data from the database
- Format, perform calculations on, store, and print query results in the form of reports
- Create script files to store SQL statements for repetitive use in the future

SQL*Plus commands can be divided into the following main categories:

Category	Purpose
Environment	Affects the general behavior of SQL statements for the session
Format	Formats query results
File manipulation	Saves, loads, and runs script files
Execution	Sends SQL statements from SQL buffer to Oracle8 Server
Edit	Modifies SQL statements in the buffer
Interaction	Allows you to create and pass variables to SQL statements, print variable values, and print messages to the screen
Miscellaneous	Has various commands to connect to the database, manipulate the SQL*Plus environment, and display column definitions

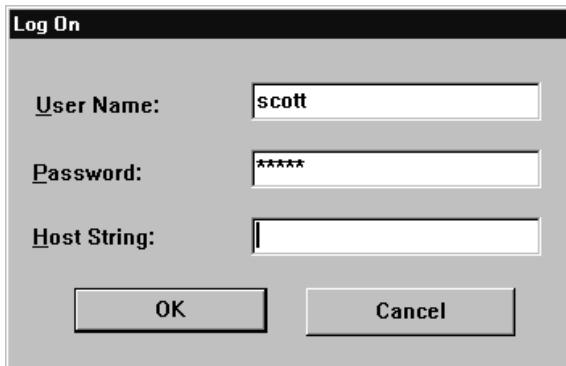
Instructor Note (for page 1-27)

Snippet: “Establishing a Database Session”

Logging in to SQL*Plus: Release number may vary, depending on the version installed.

Logging In to SQL*Plus

- From Windows environment:



- From command line:

```
sqlplus [username[/password  
[@database]]]
```

1-27

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Logging In to SQL*Plus

How you invoke SQL*Plus depends on which type of operating system or Windows environment you are running.

To log in through a Windows environment:

1. Click Start—>Programs—>Oracle for Windows NT—>SQL*Plus 8.0.
2. Fill in username, password, and database.

To log in through a command-line environment:

1. Log on to your machine.
2. Enter the SQL*Plus command as shown in the slide.

In the command:

username is your database username
password is your database password (if you enter your password here, it is visible)
@database is the database connect string

Note: To ensure the integrity of your password, do not enter it at the operating system prompt. Instead, enter only your username. Enter your password at the Password prompt.

Once you are successfully logged in to SQL*Plus, you see the following message:

```
SQL*Plus : Release 8.0.3.0.0 - Production on Tue Jun 22 16:03:43 1999  
(c) Copyright 1999 Oracle Corporation. All rights reserved.
```

Displaying Table Structure

Use the SQL*Plus DESCRIBE command to display the structure of a table.

```
DESC [RIBE]  tablename
```

Displaying Table Structure

In SQL*Plus, you can display the structure of a table using the DESCRIBE command. The result of the command is to see the column names and datatypes as well as whether a column *must* contain data.

In the syntax:

tablename is the name of any existing table, view, or synonym accessible to the user

Displaying Table Structure

```
SQL> DESCRIBE dept
```

Name	Null?	Type
DEPTNO	NOT NULL	NUMBER (2)
DNAME		VARCHAR2 (14)
LOC		VARCHAR2 (13)

1-29

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Displaying Table Structure (continued)

The example on the slide displays the information about the structure of the DEPT table.

In the result:

Null? indicates whether a column *must* contain data; NOT NULL indicates that a column must contain data

Type displays the datatype for a column

The datatypes are described in the following table:

Datatype	Description
NUMBER(<i>p,s</i>)	Number value having a maximum number of digits <i>p</i> , the number of digits to the right of the decimal point <i>s</i>
VARCHAR2(<i>s</i>)	Variable-length character value of maximum size <i>s</i>
DATE	Date and time value between January 1, 4712 B.C. and December 31, 9999 A.D.
CHAR(<i>s</i>)	Fixed-length character value of size <i>s</i>

Instructor Note

Inform students that the column sequence in DESCRIBE *tablename* is the same as that in SELECT * FROM *tablename*. The order in which the columns are displayed is determined when the table is created.

SQL*Plus Editing Commands

- **A[PPEND] *text***
- **C[HANGE] / *old* / *new***
- **C[HANGE] / *text* /**
- **CL[EAR] BUFF[ER]**
- **DEL**
- **DEL *n***
- **DEL *m n***

1-30

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SQL*Plus Editing Commands

SQL*Plus commands are entered one line at a time and are not stored in the SQL buffer.

Command	Description
A[PPEND] <i>text</i>	Adds text to the end of the current line
C[HANGE] / <i>old</i> / <i>new</i>	Changes <i>old</i> text to <i>new</i> in the current line
C[HANGE] / <i>text</i> /	Deletes <i>text</i> from the current line
CL[EAR] BUFF[ER]	Deletes all lines from the SQL buffer
DEL	Deletes current line

Guidelines

- If you press [Return] before completing a command, SQL*Plus prompts you with a line number.
- You terminate the SQL buffer by either entering one of the terminator characters (semicolon or slash) or pressing [Return] twice. You then see the SQL prompt.

SQL*Plus Editing Commands

- **I[NPUT]**
- **I[NPUT] *text***
- **L[IST]**
- **L[IST] *n***
- **L[IST] *m n***
- **R[UN]**
- ***n***
- ***n text***
- **0 *text***

1-31

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SQL*Plus Editing Commands (continued)

Command	Description
I[NPUT T]	Inserts an indefinite number of lines
I[NPUT] <i>text</i>	Inserts a line consisting of <i>text</i>
L[IST]	Lists all lines in the SQL buffer
L[IST] <i>n</i>	Lists one line (specified by <i>n</i>)
L[IST] <i>m n</i>	Lists a range of lines (<i>m</i> to <i>n</i>)
R[UN]	Displays and runs the current SQL statement in the buffer
<i>n</i>	Specifies the line to make the current line
<i>n text</i>	Replaces line <i>n</i> with <i>text</i>
0 <i>text</i>	Inserts a line before line 1

You can enter only one SQL*Plus command per SQL prompt. SQL*Plus commands are not stored in the buffer. To continue a SQL*Plus command on the next line, end the current line with a hyphen (-).

Instructor Note

Show students the use of the commonly used editing commands, such as A[PPEND], C[HANGE], DEL, L[IST], and R[UN].

SQL*Plus File Commands

- **SAVE *filename***
- **GET *filename***
- **START *filename***
- **@ *filename***
- **EDIT *filename***
- **SPOOL *filename***
- **EXIT**

1-32

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SQL*Plus File Commands

SQL statements communicate with the Oracle Server. SQL*Plus commands control the environment, format query results, and manage files. You can use the commands identified in the following table:

Command	Description
SAV[E] <i>filename</i> [.ext] [REP[LACE]APP[END]]	Saves current contents of SQL buffer to a file. Use APPEND to add to an existing file; use REPLACE to overwrite an existing file. The default extension is .sql.
GET <i>filename</i> [.ext]	Writes the contents of a previously saved file to the SQL buffer. The default extension for the filename is .sql.
STA[RT] <i>filename</i> [.ext]	Runs a previously saved command file.
@ <i>filename</i>	Runs a previously saved command file (same as START).
ED[IT]	Invokes the editor and saves the buffer contents to a file named afiedt.buf.
ED[IT] [<i>filename</i> [.ext]]	Invokes editor to edit contents of a saved file.
SPO[OL] [<i>filename</i> [.ext]] OFF OUT	Stores query results in a file. OFF closes the spool file. OUT closes the spool file and sends the file results to the system printer.
EXIT	Leaves SQL*Plus.

Summary

```
SELECT      [DISTINCT] {*,column alias,...}
FROM        table;
```

Use SQL*Plus as an environment to:

- Execute SQL statements
- Edit SQL statements

1-33

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SELECT Statement

In this lesson, you have learned about retrieving data from a database table with the SELECT statement.

```
SELECT      [DISTINCT] {*,column alias,...}
FROM        table;
```

where:	SELECT	is a list of at least one column
	DISTINCT	suppresses duplicates
	*	selects all columns
	<i>column</i>	selects the named column
	<i>alias</i>	gives selected column a different heading
	FROM <i>table</i>	specifies the table containing the columns

SQL*Plus

SQL*Plus is an execution environment that you can use to send SQL statements to the database server and to edit and save SQL statements. Statements can be executed from the SQL prompt or from a script file.

Practice Overview

- Selecting all data from different tables
- Describing the structure of tables
- Performing arithmetic calculations and specifying column names
- Using SQL*Plus editor

1-34

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Practice Overview

This is the first of many practices. The solutions (if you require them) can be found in Appendix A. Practices are intended to introduce all topics covered in the lesson. Questions 2–4 are paper-based.

In any practice, there may be “if you have time” or “if you want extra challenge” questions. Do these only if you have completed all other questions within the allocated time and would like a further challenge to your skills.

Take the practice slowly and precisely. You can experiment with saving and running command files. If you have any questions at any time, attract the instructor’s attention.

Paper-Based Questions

For questions 2–4, circle either True or False.

Instructor Note

Let the students know that to get a listing of the tables they can access during the course, the command is:

```
SQL> SELECT *
  2   FROM   TAB;
```

Practice 1

1. Initiate a SQL*Plus session using the user ID and password provided by the instructor.
2. SQL*Plus commands access the database.
True/False
3. Will the SELECT statement execute successfully?
True/False

```
SQL> SELECT      ename, job, sal Salary  
2   FROM      emp;
```

4. Will the SELECT statement execute successfully?
True/False

```
SQL> SELECT      *  
2   FROM      salgrade;
```

5. There are four coding errors in this statement. Can you identify them?

```
SQL> SELECT      empno, ename  
2           salary x 12 ANNUAL SALARY  
3   FROM      emp;
```

6. Show the structure of the DEPT table. Select all data from the DEPT table.

Name	Null?	Type
DEPTNO	NOT NULL	NUMBER (2)
DNAME		VARCHAR2 (14)
LOC		VARCHAR2 (13)
DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

Practice 1 (continued)

7. Show the structure of the EMP table. Create a query to display the name, job, hire date, and employee number for each employee, with employee number appearing first. Save your SQL statement to a file named p1q7.sql.

Name	Null?	Type
EMPNO	NOT NULL	NUMBER(4)
ENAME		VARCHAR2(10)
JOB		VARCHAR2(9)
MGR		NUMBER(4)
HIREDATE		DATE
SAL		NUMBER(7,2)
COMM		NUMBER(7,2)
DEPTNO	NOT NULL	NUMBER(2)

8. Run your query in the file p1q7.sql.

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	HIREDATE
7839	KING	PRESIDENT	17-NOV-81
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	01-MAY-81
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	09-JUN-81
7566	JONES	MANAGER	02-APR-81
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	28-SEP-81
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	20-FEB-81
7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	08-SEP-81
7900	JAMES	CLERK	03-DEC-81
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	22-FEB-81
7902	FORD	ANALYST	03-DEC-81
7369	SMITH	CLERK	17-DEC-80
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	09-DEC-82
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	12-JAN-83
7934	MILLER	CLERK	23-JAN-82

14 rows selected.

Practice 1 (continued)

9. Create a query to display unique jobs from the EMP table.

```
JOB
-----
ANALYST
CLERK
MANAGER
PRESIDENT
SALESMAN
```

If you have time, complete the following exercises:

10. Load p1q7.sql into the SQL buffer. Name the column headings Emp #, Employee, Job, and Hire Date, respectively. Rerun your query.

Emp #	Employee	Job	Hire Date
7839	KING	PRESIDENT	17-NOV-81
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	01-MAY-81
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	09-JUN-81
7566	JONES	MANAGER	02-APR-81
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	28-SEP-81
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	20-FEB-81
7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	08-SEP-81
7900	JAMES	CLERK	03-DEC-81
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	22-FEB-81
7902	FORD	ANALYST	03-DEC-81
7369	SMITH	CLERK	17-DEC-80
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	09-DEC-82
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	12-JAN-83
7934	MILLER	CLERK	23-JAN-82

14 rows selected.

Practice 1 (continued)

11. Display the name concatenated with the job, separated by a comma and space, and name the column Employee and Title.

```
Employee and Title
```

```
-----  
KING, PRESIDENT  
BLAKE, MANAGER  
CLARK, MANAGER  
JONES, MANAGER  
MARTIN, SALESMAN  
ALLEN, SALESMAN  
TURNER, SALESMAN  
JAMES, CLERK  
WARD, SALESMAN  
FORD, ANALYST  
SMITH, CLERK  
SCOTT, ANALYST  
ADAMS, CLERK  
MILLER, CLERK  
14 rows selected.
```

If you want extra challenge, complete the following exercise:

12. Create a query to display all the data from the EMP table. Separate each column by a comma. Name the column THE_OUTPUT.

```
THE_OUTPUT
```

```
-----  
7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81,5000,,10  
7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81,2850,,30  
7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81,2450,,10  
7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81,2975,,20  
7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81,1250,1400,30  
7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81,1600,300,30  
7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81,1500,0,30  
7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81,950,,30  
7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81,1250,500,30  
7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81,3000,,20  
7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80,800,,20  
7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,09-DEC-82,3000,,20  
7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,12-JAN-83,1100,,20  
7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82,1300,,10  
14 rows selected.
```

2

Restricting and Sorting Data

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	45 minutes	Lecture
	30 minutes	Practice
	75 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **Limit the rows retrieved by a query**
- **Sort the rows retrieved by a query**

Lesson Aim

While retrieving data from the database, you may need to restrict the rows of data that are displayed or specify the order in which the rows are displayed. This lesson explains the SQL statements that you will use to perform these actions.

Limiting Rows Using a Selection

EMP

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	...	DEPTNO
7839	KING	PRESIDENT		10
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER		30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER		10
7566	JONES	MANAGER		20
...				

"...retrieve all
employees
in department 10"

EMP

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	...	DEPTNO
7839	KING	PRESIDENT		10
7782	CLARK	MANAGER		10
7934	MILLER	CLERK		10

Limiting Rows Using a Selection

In the example on the slide, assume that you want to display all the employees in department 10. The highlighted set of rows with a value of 10 in DEPTNO column are the only ones returned. This method of restriction is the basis of the WHERE clause in SQL.

Limiting Rows Selected

- Restrict the rows returned by using the WHERE clause.

```
SELECT      [DISTINCT] { * | column [alias], ... }
FROM        table
[WHERE      condition(s)];
```

- The WHERE clause follows the FROM clause.

Limiting Rows Selected

You can restrict the rows returned from the query by using the WHERE clause. A WHERE clause contains a condition that must be met, and it directly follows the FROM clause.

In the syntax:

WHERE	restricts the query to rows that meet a condition
<i>condition</i>	is composed of column names, expressions, constants, and a comparison operator

The WHERE clause can compare values in columns, literal values, arithmetic expressions, or functions. The WHERE clause consists of three elements:

- Column name
- Comparison operator
- Column name, constant, or list of values

Using the WHERE Clause

```
SQL> SELECT ename, job, deptno  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE job='CLERK';
```

ENAME	JOB	DEPTNO
JAMES	CLERK	30
SMITH	CLERK	20
ADAMS	CLERK	20
MILLER	CLERK	10

Using the WHERE Clause

In the example, the SELECT statement retrieves the name, job title, and department number of all employees whose job title is CLERK.

Note that the job title CLERK has been specified in uppercase to ensure that the match is made with the job column in the EMP table. Character strings are case sensitive.

Instructor Note

Snippet: “Processing a Query”

Character Strings and Dates

- Character strings and date values are enclosed in single quotation marks.
- Character values are case sensitive and date values are format sensitive.
- The default date format is DD-MON-YY .

```
SQL> SELECT    ename, job, deptno
  2  FROM      emp
  3  WHERE     ename = 'JAMES' ;
```

2-6

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Character Strings and Dates

Character strings and dates in the WHERE clause must be enclosed in single quotation marks (' '). Number constants, however, should not.

All character searches are case sensitive. In the following example, no rows are returned because the EMP table stores all the data in uppercase:

```
SQL> SELECT ename, empno, job, deptno
  2  FROM    emp
  3  WHERE   job='clerk' ;
```

Oracle stores dates in an internal numeric format, representing the century, year, month, day, hours, minutes, and seconds. The default date display is DD-MON-YY.

Note: Changing default date format will be covered in a subsequent lesson.

Number values are not enclosed within quotation marks.

Instructor Note

Some students may ask how to override the case sensitivity. Later in the course, we will cover the use of single-row functions such as UPPER and LOWER to override the case sensitivity.

Comparison Operators

Operator	Meaning
=	Equal to
>	Greater than
>=	Greater than or equal to
<	Less than
<=	Less than or equal to
<>	Not equal to

2-7

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Comparison Operators

Comparison operators are used in conditions that compare one expression to another. They are used in the WHERE clause in the following format:

Syntax

```
... WHERE expr operator value
```

Examples

```
... WHERE hiredate='01-JAN-95'  
... WHERE sal>=1500  
... WHERE ename='SMITH'
```

Instructor Note

Remind students that the *expr* cannot be an alias. Mention in brief about the date TO_DATE function, when the date is to be entered in a format other than the default format. This is required for practice 4.

Using the Comparison Operators

```
SQL> SELECT ename, sal, comm  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE sal<=comm;
```

ENAME	SAL	COMM
MARTIN	1250	1400

Using the Comparison Operators

In the example, the SELECT statement retrieves name, salary, and commission from the EMP table, where the employee salary is less than or equal to the commission amount. Note that there is no explicit value supplied to the WHERE clause. The two values being compared are taken from the SAL and COMM columns in the EMP table.

Instructor Note

Rows that have a null value in the COMM column result in a null value for the comparison expression and are effectively not part of the result.

Other Comparison Operators

Operator	Meaning
BETWEEN ...AND...	Between two values (inclusive)
IN(list)	Match any of a list of values
LIKE	Match a character pattern
IS NULL	Is a null value

Using the BETWEEN Operator

Use the BETWEEN operator to display rows based on a range of values.

```
SQL> SELECT ename, sal  
2  FROM emp  
3  WHERE sal BETWEEN 1000 AND 1500;
```

ENAME	SAL	Lower limit	Higher limit
MARTIN	1250		
TURNER	1500		
WARD	1250		
ADAMS	1100		
MILLER	1300		

2-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The BETWEEN Operator

You can display rows based on a range of values using the BETWEEN operator. The range that you specify contains a lower range and an upper range.

The SELECT statement on the slide returns rows from the EMP table for any employee whose salary is between \$1000 and \$1500.

Values specified with the BETWEEN operator are inclusive. You must specify the lower limit first.

Instructor Note

Emphasize that the values specified with the BETWEEN operator in the example are inclusive. Point out that Turner, who earns \$1500 (higher limit), is included in the output. Explain that BETWEEN ... AND ... are actually translated by Oracle server to a pair of AND conditions, (a \geq lower limit) and (a \leq higher limit). So using BETWEEN ... AND ... has no performance benefits and can be used for logical simplicity.

Demo: 12betw.sql

Purpose: To illustrate using the BETWEEN operator.

Using the IN Operator

Use the IN operator to test for values in a list.

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, sal, mgr  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE mgr IN (7902, 7566, 7788);
```

EMPNO	ENAME	SAL	MGR
7902	FORD	3000	7566
7369	SMITH	800	7902
7788	SCOTT	3000	7566
7876	ADAMS	1100	7788

2-11

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The IN Operator

To test for values in a specified list, use the IN operator.

The slide example displays employee number, name, salary, and manager's employee number of all the employees whose manager's employee number is 7902, 7566, or 7788.

The IN operator can be used with any datatype. The following example returns a row from the EMP table for any employee whose name is included in the list of names in the WHERE clause:

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, mgr, deptno  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE ename IN ('FORD' , 'ALLEN');
```

If characters or dates are used in the list, they must be enclosed in single quotation marks (' ').

Instructor Note

Explain that the IN (...) is actually translated by Oracle server to a set of OR conditions (a = value1 OR a = value2 OR a = value3). So using IN (...) has no performance benefits and can be used for logical simplicity.

Demo: 12in.sql

Purpose: To illustrate using the IN operator.

Using the LIKE Operator

- Use the LIKE operator to perform wildcard searches of valid search string values.
- Search conditions can contain either literal characters or numbers.
 - % denotes zero or many characters.
 - _ denotes one character.

```
SQL> SELECT    ename
  2  FROM      emp
  3  WHERE     ename LIKE 'S%';
```

2-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The LIKE Operator

You may not always know the exact value to search for. You can select rows that match a character pattern by using the LIKE operator. The character pattern-matching operation is referred to as a *wildcard* search. Two symbols can be used to construct the search string.

Symbol	Description
%	Represents any sequence of zero or more characters
_	Represents any single character

The SELECT statement above returns the employee name from the EMP table for any employee whose name begins with an “S.” Note the uppercase “S.” Names beginning with an “s” will not be returned.

The LIKE operator can be used as a shortcut for some BETWEEN comparisons. The following example displays names and hire dates of all employees who joined between January 1981 and December 1981:

```
SQL> SELECT    ename, hiredate
  2  FROM      emp
  3  WHERE     hiredate LIKE '%1981';
```

Using the LIKE Operator

- You can combine pattern-matching characters.

```
SQL> SELECT    ename
  2  FROM      emp
  3  WHERE     ename LIKE '_A%';
```

ENAME

MARTIN
JAMES
WARD

- You can use the ESCAPE identifier to search for "%" or "_".

2-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Combining Wildcard Characters

The % and _ symbols can be used in any combination with literal characters. The example on the slide displays the names of all employees whose name has an “A” as the second character.

The ESCAPE Option

When you need to have an exact match for the actual '%' and '_' characters, use the ESCAPE option. This option specifies what the ESCAPE character is. If you have HEAD_QUARTERS as a department name, you would search for it using the following SQL statement:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM dept
  2  WHERE dname LIKE '%\_%' ESCAPE '\';
```

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
50	HEAD_QUARTERS	ATLANTA

The ESCAPE option identifies the backslash (\) as the escape character. In the pattern, the escape character precedes the underscore (_). This causes the Oracle Server to interpret the underscore literally.

Using the IS NULL Operator

Test for null values with the IS NULL operator.

```
SQL> SELECT ename, mgr  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE mgr IS NULL;
```

ENAME	MGR
KING	

2-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The IS NULL Operator

The IS NULL operator tests for values that are null. A null value means the value is unavailable, unassigned, unknown, or inapplicable. Therefore, you cannot test with (=) because a null value cannot be equal or unequal to any value. The slide example retrieves the name and manager of all employees who do not have a manager.

For example, to display name, job title, and commission for all employees who are not entitled to get a commission, use the following SQL statement:

```
SQL> SELECT ename, job, comm  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE comm IS NULL;
```

ENAME	JOB	COMM
KING	PRESIDENT	
BLAKE	MANAGER	
CLARK	MANAGER	
...		

Logical Operators

Operator	Meaning
AND	Returns TRUE if <i>both</i> component conditions are TRUE
OR	Returns TRUE if <i>either</i> component condition is TRUE
NOT	Returns TRUE if the following condition is FALSE

Logical Operators

A logical operator combines the result of two component conditions to produce a single result based on them or to invert the result of a single condition. Three logical operators are available in SQL:

- AND
- OR
- NOT

All the examples so far have specified only one condition in the WHERE clause. You can use several conditions in one WHERE clause using the AND and OR operators.

Using the AND Operator

AND requires both conditions to be TRUE.

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, job, sal
  2  FROM   emp
  3 WHERE  sal>=1100
  4 AND    job='CLERK';
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	SAL
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	1100
7934	MILLER	CLERK	1300

2-16

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The AND Operator

In the example, both conditions must be true for any record to be selected. Therefore, an employee who has a job title of CLERK *and* earns more than \$1100 will be selected.

All character searches are case sensitive. No rows are returned if CLERK is not in uppercase. Character strings must be enclosed in quotation marks.

AND Truth Table

The following table shows the results of combining two expressions with AND:

AND	TRUE	FALSE	NULL
TRUE	TRUE	FALSE	NULL
FALSE	FALSE	FALSE	FALSE
NULL	NULL	FALSE	NULL

Instructor Note

Demo: 12and.sql

Purpose: To illustrate using the AND operator.

Using the OR Operator

OR requires either condition to be TRUE.

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, job, sal
  2  FROM emp
  3 WHERE sal>=1100
  4 OR    job='CLERK';
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	SAL
7839	KING	PRESIDENT	5000
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	2850
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	2450
7566	JONES	MANAGER	2975
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	1250
...			
7900	JAMES	CLERK	950
...			

14 rows selected.

2-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The OR Operator

In the example, either condition can be true for any record to be selected. Therefore, an employee who has a job title of CLERK *or* earns more than \$1100 will be selected.

The OR Truth Table

The following table shows the results of combining two expressions with OR:

OR	TRUE	FALSE	NULL
TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE
FALSE	TRUE	FALSE	NULL
NULL	TRUE	NULL	NULL

Instructor Note

Demo: 12or.sql

Purpose: To illustrate using the OR operator.

Using the NOT Operator

```
SQL> SELECT ename, job  
2   FROM emp  
3 WHERE job NOT IN ('CLERK', 'MANAGER', 'ANALYST');
```

ENAME	JOB
KING	PRESIDENT
MARTIN	SALESMAN
ALLEN	SALESMAN
TURNER	SALESMAN
WARD	SALESMAN

The NOT Operator

The slide example displays name and job title of all the employees whose job title *is not* CLERK, MANAGER, or ANALYST.

The NOT Truth Table

The following table shows the result of applying the NOT operator to a condition:

NOT	TRUE	FALSE	NULL
TRUE	FALSE	TRUE	NULL

Note: The NOT operator can also be used with other SQL operators, such as BETWEEN, LIKE, and NULL.

```
... WHERE job NOT IN ('CLERK', 'ANALYST')  
... WHERE sal NOT BETWEEN 1000 AND 1500  
... WHERE ename NOT LIKE '%A%'  
... WHERE comm IS NOT NULL
```

Rules of Precedence

Order Evaluated	Operator
1	All comparison operators
2	NOT
3	AND
4	OR

Override rules of precedence by using parentheses.

Rules of Precedence

```
SQL> SELECT ename, job, sal
  2  FROM emp
  3 WHERE job='SALESMAN'
  4 OR  job='PRESIDENT'
  5 AND sal>1500;
```

ENAME	JOB	SAL
KING	PRESIDENT	5000
MARTIN	SALESMAN	1250
ALLEN	SALESMAN	1600
TURNER	SALESMAN	1500
WARD	SALESMAN	1250

2-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Example of Precedence of AND Operator

In the slide example, there are two conditions:

- The first condition is that job is PRESIDENT *and* salary is greater than 1500.
- The second condition is that job is SALESMAN.

Therefore, the SELECT statement reads as follows:

“Select the row if an employee is a PRESIDENT *and* earns more than \$1500 *or* if the employee is a SALESMAN.”

Instructor Note

Demo: 12sal1.sql

Purpose: To illustrate the rules of precedence.

Rules of Precedence

Use parentheses to force priority.

```
SQL> SELECT    ename, job, sal
  2  FROM      emp
  3  WHERE    (job='SALESMAN'
  4  OR       job='PRESIDENT')
  5  AND      sal>1500;
```

ENAME	JOB	SAL
KING	PRESIDENT	5000
ALLEN	SALESMAN	1600

2-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using Parentheses

In the example, there are two conditions:

- The first condition is that job is PRESIDENT *or* SALESMAN.
- The second condition is that salary is greater than 1500.

Therefore, the SELECT statement reads as follows:

“Select the row if an employee is a PRESIDENT or a SALESMAN and if the employee earns more than \$1500.”

Instructor Note

Demo: 12sal2.sql

Purpose: To illustrate the rules of precedence.

ORDER BY Clause

- Sort rows with the ORDER BY clause
 - ASC: ascending order, default
 - DESC: descending order
- The ORDER BY clause comes last in the SELECT statement.

```
SQL> SELECT      ename, job, deptno, hiredate
  2  FROM        emp
  3  ORDER BY    hiredate;
```

ENAME	JOB	DEPTNO	HIREDATE
SMITH	CLERK	20	17-DEC-80
ALLEN	SALESMAN	30	20-FEB-81
...			
14 rows selected.			

2-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The ORDER BY Clause

The order of rows returned in a query result is undefined. The ORDER BY clause can be used to sort the rows. If you use the ORDER BY clause, you must place last. You can specify an expression or an alias to sort.

Syntax

```
SELECT      expr
  FROM      table
  [WHERE     condition(s)]
  [ORDER BY  {column, expr} {ASC|DESC}];
```

where: ORDER BY specifies the order in which the retrieved rows are displayed
 ASC orders the rows in ascending order (this is the default order)
 DESC orders the rows in descending order

If the ORDER BY clause is not used, the sort order is undefined, and the Oracle Server may not fetch rows in the same order for the same query twice. Use the ORDER BY clause to display the rows in a specific order.

Instructor Note

Let the students know that the ORDER BY clause is executed last in query execution.

Sorting in Descending Order

```
SQL> SELECT      ename, job, deptno, hiredate
  2  FROM        emp
  3  ORDER BY    hiredate DESC;
```

ENAME	JOB	DEPTNO	HIREDATE
ADAMS	CLERK	20	12-JAN-83
SCOTT	ANALYST	20	09-DEC-82
MILLER	CLERK	10	23-JAN-82
JAMES	CLERK	30	03-DEC-81
FORD	ANALYST	20	03-DEC-81
KING	PRESIDENT	10	17-NOV-81
MARTIN	SALESMAN	30	28-SEP-81
...			
14 rows selected.			

2-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Default Ordering of Data

The default sort order is ascending:

- Numeric values are displayed with the lowest values first—for example, 1–999.
- Date values are displayed with the earliest value first—for example, 01-JAN-92 before 01-JAN-95.
- Character values are displayed in alphabetical order—for example, A first and Z last.
- Null values are displayed last for ascending sequences and first for descending sequences.

Reversing the Default Order

To reverse the order in which rows are displayed, specify the keyword DESC after the column name in the ORDER BY clause. The slide example sorts the result by the most recently hired employee.

Instructor Note

Let the students know that you can also sort by a column number in the SELECT list. The example below will sort the output in the descending order by salary.

```
SQL> SELECT      ename,    sal
  2  FROM        emp
  3  ORDER BY    2 DESC;
```

Sorting by Column Alias

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, sal*12 annsal  
2 FROM emp  
3 ORDER BY annsal;
```

EMPNO	ENAME	ANNSAL
7369	SMITH	9600
7900	JAMES	11400
7876	ADAMS	13200
7654	MARTIN	15000
7521	WARD	15000
7934	MILLER	15600
7844	TURNER	18000
...		
14 rows selected.		

2-24

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Sorting by Column Aliases

You can use a column alias in the ORDER BY clause. The slide example sorts the data by annual salary.

Sorting by Multiple Columns

- The order of ORDER BY list is the order of sort.

```
SQL> SELECT      ename, deptno, sal
  2  FROM        emp
  3  ORDER BY    deptno, sal DESC;
```

ENAME	DEPTNO	SAL
KING	10	5000
CLARK	10	2450
MILLER	10	1300
FORD	20	3000
...		
14 rows selected.		

- You can sort by a column that is not in the SELECT list.

2-25

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Sorting by Multiple Columns

You can sort query results by more than one column. The sort limit is the number of columns in the given table.

In the ORDER BY clause, specify the columns, and separate the column names using commas. If you want to reverse the order of a column, specify DESC after its name. You can order by columns that are not included in the SELECT clause.

Example

Display name and salary of all employees. Order the result by department number and then descending order by salary.

```
SQL> SELECT      ename,    sal
  2  FROM        emp
  3  ORDER BY    deptno, sal DESC;
```

Instructor Note

Show that the DEPTNO column is sorted in ascending order and the SAL column in descending order.

Summary

```
SELECT      [DISTINCT]  {*} | column [alias], ... }  
FROM        table  
[WHERE       condition(s)]  
[ORDER BY   {column, expr, alias} [ASC|DESC]];
```

Summary

In this lesson, you have learned about restricting and sorting rows returned by the SELECT statement. You have also learned how to implement various operators.

Practice Overview

- Selecting data and changing the order of rows displayed
- Restricting rows by using the WHERE clause
- Using the double quotation marks in column aliases

2-27

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Practice Overview

This practice gives you a variety of exercises using the WHERE clause and the ORDER BY clause.

Practice 2

1. Create a query to display the name and salary of employees earning more than \$2850.
Save your SQL statement to a file named p2q1.sql. Run your query.

ENAME	SAL
KING	5000
JONES	2975
FORD	3000
SCOTT	3000

2. Create a query to display the employee name and department number for employee number 7566.

ENAME	DEPTNO
JONES	20

3. Modify p2q1.sql to display the name and salary for all employees whose salary is not in the range of \$1500 and \$2850. Resave your SQL statement to a file named p2q3.sql. Rerun your query.

ENAME	SAL
KING	5000
JONES	2975
MARTIN	1250
JAMES	950
WARD	1250
FORD	3000
SMITH	800
SCOTT	3000
ADAMS	1100
MILLER	1300

10 rows selected.

Practice 2 (continued)

4. Display the employee name, job, and start date of employees hired between February 20, 1981, and May 1, 1981. Order the query in ascending order by start date.

ENAME	JOB	HIREDATE
ALLEN	SALESMAN	20-FEB-81
WARD	SALESMAN	22-FEB-81
JONES	MANAGER	02-APR-81
BLAKE	MANAGER	01-MAY-81

5. Display the employee name and department number of all employees in departments 10 and 30 in alphabetical order by name.

ENAME	DEPTNO
ALLEN	30
BLAKE	30
CLARK	10
JAMES	30
JONES	10
MARTIN	30
MILLER	10
TURNER	30
WARD	30

9 rows selected.

6. Modify p2q3.sql to list the name and salary of employees who earn more than \$1500 and are in department 10 or 30. Label the columns Employee and Monthly Salary, respectively. Resave your SQL statement to a file named p2q6.sql. Rerun your query.

Employee	Monthly Salary
KING	5000
BLAKE	2850
CLARK	2450
ALLEN	1600

Practice 2 (continued)

7. Display the name and hire date of every employee who was hired in 1982.

ENAME	HIREDATE
SCOTT	09-DEC-82
MILLER	23-JAN-82

8. Display the name and job title of all employees who do not have a manager.

ENAME	JOB
KING	PRESIDENT

9. Display the name, salary, and commission for all employees who earn commissions. Sort data in descending order of salary and commissions.

ENAME	SAL	COMM
ALLEN	1600	300
TURNER	1500	0
MARTIN	1250	1400
WARD	1250	500

If you have time, complete the following exercises:

10. Display the names of all employees where the third letter of their name is an *A*.

ENAME
BLAKE
CLARK
ADAMS

11. Display the name of all employees who have two *Ls* in their name and are in department 30 or their manager is 7782.

ENAME
ALLEN
MILLER

Practice 2 (continued)

If you want extra challenge, complete the following exercises:

12. Display the name, job, and salary for all employees whose job is Clerk or Analyst and their salary is not equal to \$1000, \$3000, or \$5000.

ENAME	JOB	SAL
JAMES	CLERK	950
SMITH	CLERK	800
ADAMS	CLERK	1100
MILLER	CLERK	1300

13. Modify p2q6.sql to display the name, salary, and commission for all employees whose commission amount is greater than their salary increased by 10%. Rerun your query. Resave your query as p2q13.sql.

Employee	Monthly Salary	COMM
MARTIN	1250	1400

3

Single-Row Functions

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	55 minutes	Lecture
	30 minutes	Practice
	85 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **Describe various types of functions available in SQL**
- **Use character, number, and date functions in SELECT statements**
- **Describe the use of conversion functions**

3-2

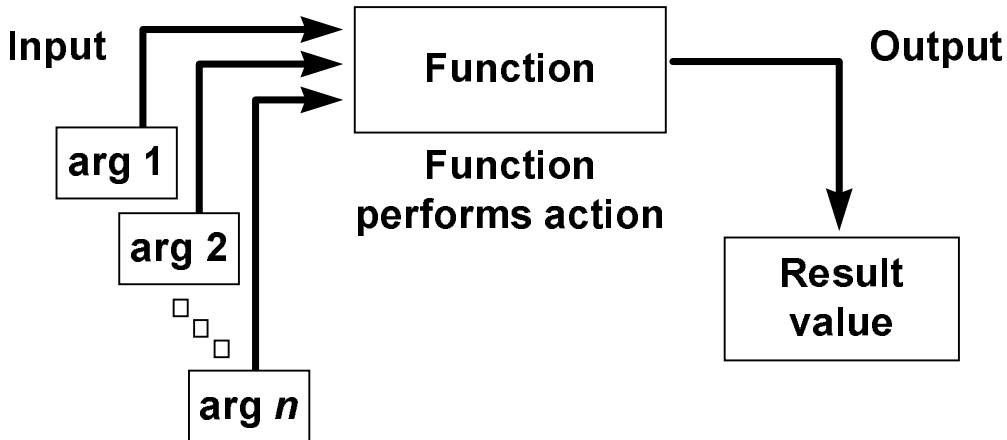
Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Lesson Aim

Functions make the basic query block more powerful and are used to manipulate data values. This is the first of two lessons that explore functions. You will focus on single-row character, number, and date functions, as well as those functions that convert data from one type to another—for example, character data to numeric.

SQL Functions



3-3

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SQL Functions

Functions are a very powerful feature of SQL and can be used to do the following:

- Perform calculations on data
- Modify individual data items
- Manipulate output for groups of rows
- Format dates and numbers for display
- Convert column datatypes

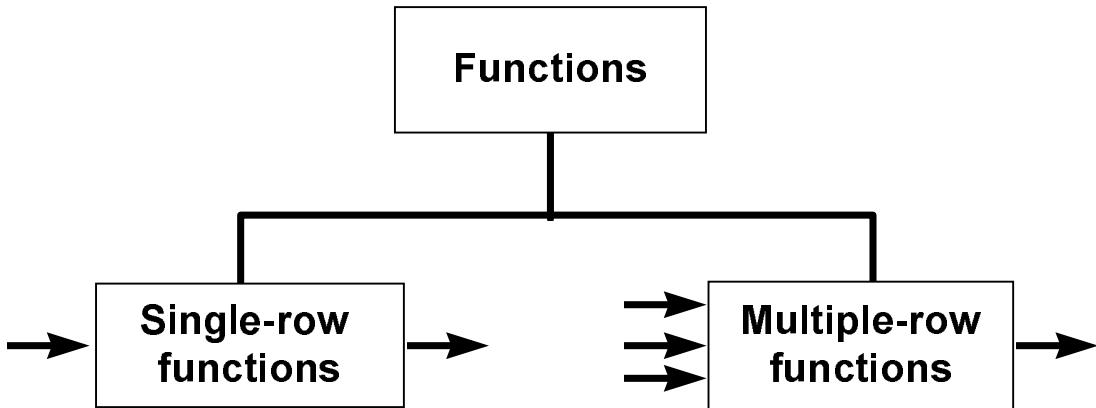
SQL functions may accept arguments and always return a value.

Note: Most of the functions described in this lesson are specific to Oracle's version of SQL.

Instructor Note

This lesson does not discuss all functions in great detail. It presents the most common functions with a brief explanation of them.

Two Types of SQL Functions



3-4

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SQL Functions (continued)

There are two distinct types of functions:

- Single-row functions
- Multiple-row functions

Single-Row Functions

These functions operate on single rows only and return one result per row. There are different types of single-row functions. This lesson covers the following ones:

- Character
- Number
- Date
- Conversion

Multiple-Row Functions

These functions manipulate groups of rows to give one result per group of rows.

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, for the complete list of available functions and syntax.

Single-Row Functions

- Manipulate data items
- Accept arguments and return one value
- Act on each row returned
- Return one result per row
- May modify the datatype
- Can be nested

```
function_name (column|expression, [arg1, arg2,...])
```

3-5

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Single-Row Functions

Single-row functions are used to manipulate data items. They accept one or more arguments and return one value for each row returned by the query. An argument can be one of the following:

- User-supplied constant
- Variable value
- Column name
- Expression

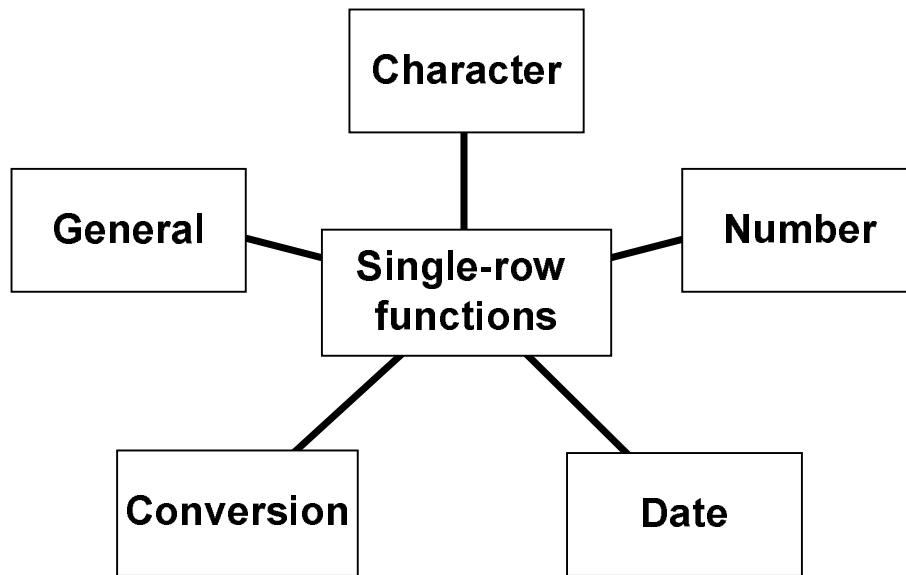
Features of single-row functions:

- Act on each row returned in the query
- Return one result per row
- May return a data value of a different type than that referenced
- May expect one or more arguments
- Can be used in SELECT, WHERE, and ORDER BY clauses; can be nested

In the syntax:

function_name is the name of the function
column is any named database column
expression is any character string or calculated expression
arg1, arg2 is any argument to be used by the function

Single-Row Functions



3-6

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

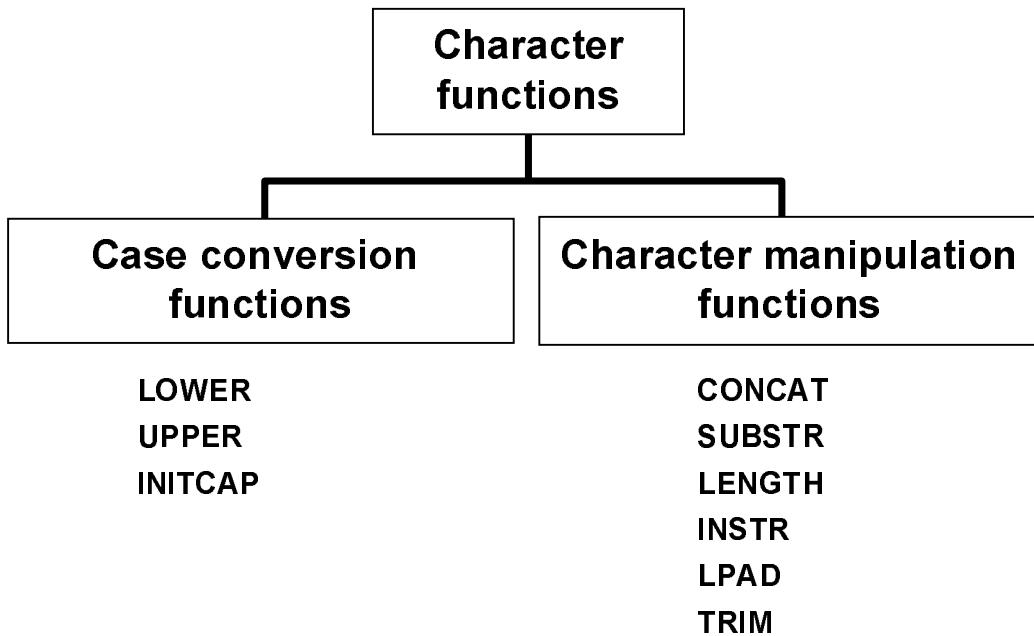
ORACLE®

Single-Row Functions (continued)

This lesson covers the following single-row functions:

- Character functions: Accept character input and can return both character and number values
- Number functions: Accept numeric input and return numeric values
- Date functions: Operate on values of the date datatype (All date functions return a value of date datatype except the `MONTHS_BETWEEN` function, which returns a number.)
- Conversion functions: Convert a value from one datatype to another
- General functions:
 - `NVL` function
 - `DECODE` function

Character Functions



3-7

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Character Functions

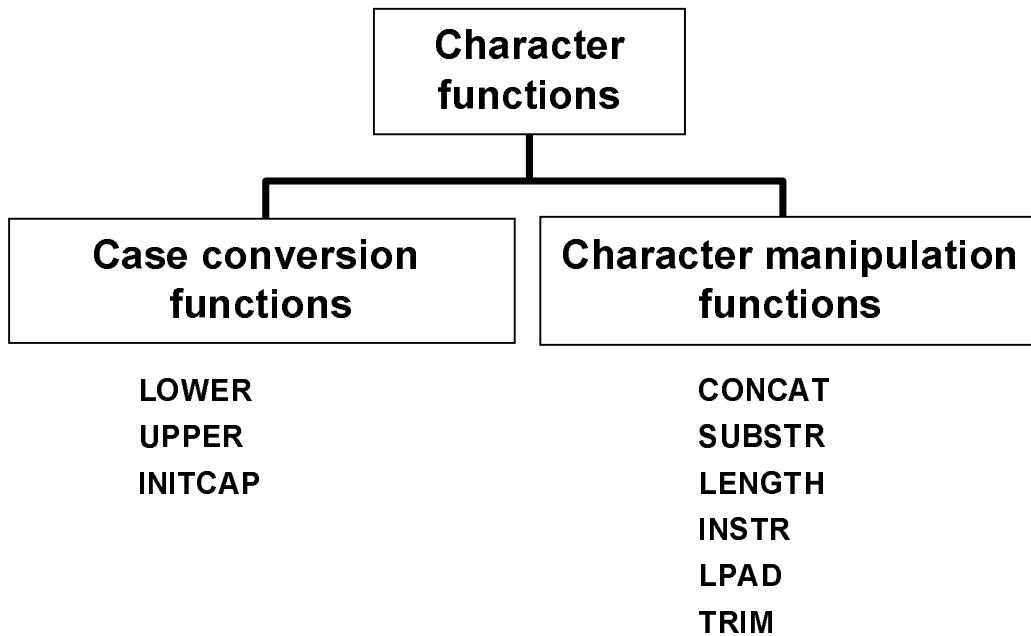
Single-row character functions accept character data as input and can return both character and number values. Character functions can be divided into the following:

- Case conversion functions
- Character manipulation functions

Function	Purpose
LOWER(<i>column expression</i>)	Converts alpha character values to lowercase
UPPER(<i>column expression</i>)	Converts alpha character values to uppercase
INITCAP(<i>column expression</i>)	Converts alpha character values to uppercase for the first letter of each word, all other letters in lowercase
CONCAT(<i>column1 expression1, column2 expression2</i>)	Concatenates the first character value to the second character value; equivalent to concatenation operator ()
SUBSTR(<i>column expression,m[,n]</i>)	Returns specified characters from character value starting at character position <i>m</i> , <i>n</i> characters long (If <i>m</i> is negative, the count starts from the end of the character value. If <i>n</i> is omitted, all characters to the end of the string are returned.)

Note: The functions discussed in this lesson is a subset of the available functions.

Character Functions



3-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Character Functions (continued)

Function	Purpose
LENGTH(<i>column expression</i>)	Returns the number of characters in value
INSTR(<i>column expression,m</i>)	Returns the numeric position of a named character
LPAD(<i>column expression, n, 'string'</i>)	Pads the character value right-justified to a total width of <i>n</i> character positions
TRIM(<i>leading trailing both, trim_character FROM trim_source</i>)	Enables you to trim heading or trailing characters (or both) from a character string. If <i>trim_character</i> or <i>trim_source</i> is a character literal, you must enclose it in single quotes. This is a feature available from Oracle8 <i>i</i> onward.

Case Conversion Functions

Convert case for character strings

Function	Result
LOWER('SQL Course')	sql course
UPPER('SQL Course')	SQL COURSE
INITCAP('SQL Course')	Sql Course

3-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Case Conversion Functions

LOWER, UPPER, and INITCAP are the three case conversion functions.

- LOWER: Converts mixed case or uppercase character string to lowercase
- UPPER: Converts mixed case or lowercase character string to uppercase
- INITCAP: Converts first letter of each word to uppercase and remaining letters to lowercase

```
SQL> SELECT 'The job title for '||INITCAP(ename)||' is '
  2  ||LOWER(job) AS "EMPLOYEE DETAILS"
  3  FROM emp;
```

EMPLOYEE DETAILS

```
-----
The job title for King is president
The job title for Blake is manager
The job title for Clark is manager
...
14 rows selected.
```

Using Case Conversion Functions

Display the employee number, name, and department number for employee Blake.

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, deptno  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE ename = 'blake';  
no rows selected
```

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, deptno  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE ename = UPPER('blake');
```

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO
7698	BLAKE	30

3-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Case Conversion Functions (continued)

The slide example displays the employee number, name, and department number of employee BLAKE.

The WHERE clause of the first SQL statement specifies the employee name as 'blake.' Since all the data in the EMP table is stored in uppercase, the name 'blake' does not find a match in the EMP table and as a result no rows are selected.

The WHERE clause of the second SQL statement specifies that the employee name in the EMP table is compared to 'blake', converted to upper case. Since both the names are in uppercase now, a match is found and one row is selected. The WHERE clause can be rewritten in the following manner to produce the same result:

```
... WHERE ename = 'BLAKE'
```

The name in the output appears as it was stored in the database. To display the name with the first letter capitalized, use the INITCAP function in the SELECT statement.

```
SQL> SELECT empno, INITCAP(ename), deptno  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE ename = UPPER('blake');
```

Character Manipulation Functions

Manipulate character strings

Function	Result
<code>CONCAT('Good', 'String')</code>	<code>GoodString</code>
<code>SUBSTR('String',1,3)</code>	<code>Str</code>
<code>LENGTH('String')</code>	<code>6</code>
<code>INSTR('String', 'r')</code>	<code>3</code>
<code>LPAD(sal,10,'*')</code>	<code>*****5000</code>
<code>TRIM('S' FROM 'SSMITH')</code>	<code>MITH</code>

3-11

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Character Manipulation Functions

CONCAT, SUBSTR, LENGTH, INSTR, LPAD, and TRIM are the six character manipulation functions covered in this lesson.

- CONCAT: Joins values together (You are limited to using two parameters with CONCAT.)
- SUBSTR: Extracts a string of determined length
- LENGTH: Shows the length of a string as a numeric value
- INSTR: Finds numeric position of a named character
- LPAD: Pads the character value right-justified

Note: RPAD character manipulation function pads the character value left-justified

TRIM: Trims heading or trailing characters (or both) from a character string. If trim_character or trim_source is a character literal, you must enclose it in single quotes.

Instructor Note

Be sure to point out RPAD to the students, because this function will be needed in a practice exercise. Also, TRIM, which is a new function in Oracle8i, does the job of both LTRIM and the RTRIM functions.

Using the Character Manipulation Functions

```
SQL> SELECT ename, CONCAT(ename, job), LENGTH(ename),
2      INSTR(ename, 'A')
3  FROM emp
4 WHERE SUBSTR(job,1,5) = 'SALES';
```

ENAME	CONCAT(ENAME, JOB)	LENGTH(ENAME)	INSTR(ENAME, 'A')
MARTIN	MARTINSALESMAN	6	2
ALLEN	ALLENSALESMAN	5	1
TURNER	TURNERSALESMAN	6	0
WARD	WARDSALESMAN	4	2

3-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Character Manipulation Functions (continued)

The slide example displays employee name and job joined together, length of the employee name, and the numeric position of the letter A in the employee name, for all employees who are in sales.

Example

Modify the SQL statement on the slide to display the data for those employees whose names end with an N.

```
SQL> SELECT    ename, CONCAT(ename, job), LENGTH(ename),
2      INSTR(ename, 'A')
3  FROM emp
4 WHERE    SUBSTR(ename, -1, 1) = 'N';
```

ENAME	CONCAT(ENAME, JOB)	LENGTH(ENAME)	INSTR(ENAME, 'A')
MARTIN	MARTINSALESMAN	6	2
ALLEN	ALLENSALESMAN	5	1

Number Functions

- **ROUND:** Rounds value to specified decimal

ROUND(45.926, 2) → 45.93

- **TRUNC:** Truncates value to specified decimal

TRUNC(45.926, 2) → 45.92

- **MOD:** Returns remainder of division

MOD(1600, 300) → 100

3-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Number Functions

Number functions accept numeric input and return numeric values. This section describes some of the number functions.

Function	Purpose
ROUND(<i>column expression, n</i>)	Rounds the column, expression, or value to <i>n</i> decimal places or if <i>n</i> is omitted, no decimal places (If <i>n</i> is negative, numbers to left of the decimal point are rounded.)
TRUNC(<i>column expression,n</i>)	Truncates the column, expression, or value to <i>n</i> decimal places or if <i>n</i> is omitted, no decimal places (If <i>n</i> is negative, numbers left of the decimal point are truncated to zero.)
MOD(<i>m,n</i>)	Returns the remainder of <i>m</i> divided by <i>n</i> .

Note: This list is a subset of the available number functions.

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “Number Functions.”

Using the ROUND Function

```
SQL> SELECT ROUND(45.923,2), ROUND(45.923,0),
2      ROUND(45.923,-1)
3  FROM  DUAL;
```

ROUND(45.923,2)	ROUND(45.923,0)	ROUND(45.923,-1)
45.92	46	50

ROUND Function

The ROUND function rounds the column, expression, or value to n decimal places. If the second argument is 0 or is missing, the value is rounded to zero decimal places. If the second argument is 2, the value is rounded to two decimal places. Conversely, if the second argument is -2, the value is rounded to two decimal places to the left.

The ROUND function can also be used with date functions. You will see examples later in this lesson.

The DUAL is a dummy table. More about this will be covered later.

Using the TRUNC Function

```
SQL> SELECT TRUNC(45.923,2), TRUNC(45.923,  
2  
TRUNC(45.923,-1)  
3 FROM DUAL;
```

TRUNC(45.923,2)	TRUNC(45.923)	TRUNC(45.923,-1)
45.92	45	40

TRUNC Function

The TRUNC function truncates the column, expression, or value to *n* decimal places.

The TRUNC function works with arguments similar to those of the ROUND function. If the second argument is 0 or is missing, the value is truncated to zero decimal places. If the second argument is 2, the value is truncated to two decimal places. Conversely, if the second argument is -2, the value is truncated to two decimal places to the left.

Like the ROUND function, the TRUNC function can be used with date functions.

Using the MOD Function

Calculate the remainder of the ratio of salary to commission for all employees whose job title is salesman.

```
SQL> SELECT    ename, sal, comm, MOD(sal, comm)
  2  FROM      emp
  3  WHERE     job = 'SALESMAN';
```

ENAME	SAL	COMM	MOD(SAL, COMM)
MARTIN	1250	1400	1250
ALLEN	1600	300	100
TURNER	1500	0	1500
WARD	1250	500	250

MOD Function

The MOD function finds the remainder of value1 divided by value2. The slide example calculates the remainder of the ratio of salary to commission for all employees whose job title is salesman.

Working with Dates

- Oracle stores dates in an internal numeric format: century, year, month, day, hours, minutes, seconds.
- The default date format is DD-MON-YY.
- SYSDATE is a function returning date and time.
- DUAL is a dummy table used to view SYSDATE.

3-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Oracle Date Format

Oracle stores dates in an internal numeric format, representing the century, year, month, day, hours, minutes, and seconds.

The default display and input format for any date is DD-MON-YY. Valid Oracle dates are between January 1, 4712 B.C., and December 31, 9999 A.D.

SYSDATE

SYSDATE is a date function that returns the current date and time. You can use SYSDATE just as you would use any other column name. For example, you can display the current date by selecting SYSDATE from a table. It is customary to select SYSDATE from a dummy table called DUAL.

DUAL

The DUAL table is owned by the user SYS and can be accessed by all users. It contains one column, DUMMY, and one row with the value X. The DUAL table is useful when you want to return a value once only—for instance, the value of a constant, pseudocolumn, or expression that is not derived from a table with user data. The DUAL table is generally used for SELECT clause syntax completeness, because both SELECT and FROM clauses are mandatory, and several calculations do not need to select from actual tables.

Example

Display the current date using the DUAL table.

```
SQL> SELECT    SYSDATE
  2  FROM      DUAL;
```

Arithmetic with Dates

- Add or subtract a number to or from a date for a resultant *date* value.
- Subtract two dates to find the *number of days* between those dates.
- Add *hours* to a date by dividing the *number of hours* by 24.

3-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Arithmetic with Dates

Since the database stores dates as numbers, you can perform calculations using arithmetic operators such as addition and subtraction. You can add and subtract number constants as well as dates.

You can perform the following operations:

Operation	Result	Description
date + number	Date	Adds a number of days to a date
date - number	Date	Subtracts a number of days from a date
date - date	Number of days	Subtracts one date from another
date + number/24	Date	Adds a number of hours to a date

Using Arithmetic Operators with Dates

```
SQL> SELECT ename, (SYSDATE-hiredate)/7 WEEKS  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE deptno = 10;
```

ENAME	WEEKS
KING	830.93709
CLARK	853.93709
MILLER	821.36566

3-19

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Arithmetic with Dates (continued)

The example on the slide displays the name and the number of weeks employed for all employees in department 10. It subtracts the current date (SYSDATE) from the date on which the employee was hired and divides the result by 7 to calculate the number of weeks that a worker has been employed.

Note: SYSDATE is a SQL function that returns the current date and time. Your results may differ from the example.

Instructor Note

If an older date is subtracted from a more current date, the difference is a negative number.

Date Functions

Function	Description
MONTHS_BETWEEN	Number of months between two dates
ADD_MONTHS	Add calendar months to date
NEXT_DAY	Next day of the date specified
LAST_DAY	Last day of the month
ROUND	Round date
TRUNC	Truncate date

3-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Date Functions

Date functions operate on Oracle dates. All date functions return a value of DATE datatype except MONTHS_BETWEEN, which returns a numeric value.

- MONTHS_BETWEEN(*date1*, *date2*): Finds the number of months between *date1* and *date2*. The result can be positive or negative. If *date1* is later than *date2*, the result is positive; if *date1* is earlier than *date2*, the result is negative. The noninteger part of the result represents a portion of the month.
- ADD_MONTHS(*date*, *n*): Adds *n* number of calendar months to *date*. The value of *n* must be an integer and can be negative.
- NEXT_DAY(*date*, '*char*'): Finds the date of the next specified day of the week ('*char*') following *date*. The value of *char* may be a number representing a day or a character string.
- LAST_DAY(*date*): Finds the date of the last day of the month that contains *date*.
- ROUND(*date*[, '*fmt*']): Returns *date* rounded to the unit specified by the format model *fmt*. If the format model *fmt* is omitted, *date* is rounded to the nearest day.
- TRUNC(*date*[, '*fmt*']): Returns *date* with the time portion of the day truncated to the unit specified by the format model *fmt*. If the format model *fmt* is omitted, *date* is truncated to the nearest day.

This list is a subset of the available date functions. The format models are covered later in this lesson. Examples of format models are month and year.

Using Date Functions

- **MONTHS_BETWEEN ('01-SEP-95','11-JAN-94')**
→ 19.6774194
- **ADD_MONTHS ('11-JAN-94',6)** → '11-JUL-94'
- **NEXT_DAY ('01-SEP-95','FRIDAY')** → '08-SEP-95'
- **LAST_DAY('01-SEP-95')** → '30-SEP-95'

3-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Date Functions (continued)

For all employees employed for fewer than 200 months, display the employee number, hire date, number of months employed, six-month review date, first Friday after hire date, and last day of the month when hired.

```
SQL> SELECT empno, hiredate,
  2      MONTHS_BETWEEN(SYSDATE, hiredate) TENURE,
  3      ADD_MONTHS(hiredate, 6) REVIEW,
  4      NEXT_DAY(hiredate, 'FRIDAY'), LAST_DAY(hiredate)
  5  FROM   emp
  6 WHERE   MONTHS_BETWEEN (SYSDATE, hiredate)<200;
```

EMPNO	HIREDATE	TENURE	REVIEW	NEXT_DAY(LAST_DAY(--
7839	17-NOV-81	192.24794	17-MAY-82	20-NOV-81 30-NOV-81
7698	01-MAY-81	198.76407	01-NOV-81	08-MAY-81 31-MAY-81
...				
11 rows selected.				

Using Date Functions

- **ROUND('25-JUL-95','MONTH')** → **01-AUG-95**
- **ROUND('25-JUL-95','YEAR')** → **01-JAN-96**
- **TRUNC('25-JUL-95','MONTH')** → **01-JUL-95**
- **TRUNC('25-JUL-95','YEAR')** → **01-JAN-95**

3-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Date Functions (continued)

The ROUND and TRUNC functions can be used for number and date values. When used with dates, these functions round or truncate to the specified format model. Therefore, you can round dates to the nearest year or month.

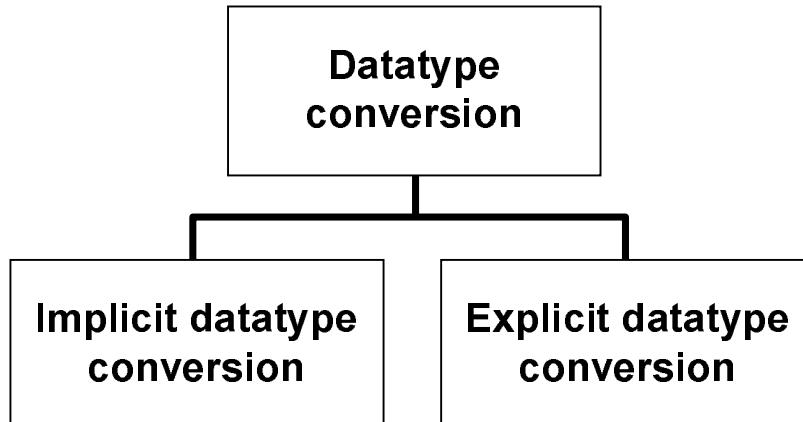
Example

Compare the hire dates for all employees who started in 1982. Display the employee number, hire date, and month started using the ROUND and TRUNC functions.

```
SQL> SELECT      empno, hiredate,
  2          ROUND(hiredate, 'MONTH'), TRUNC(hiredate, 'MONTH')
  3  FROM    emp
  4 WHERE hiredate like '%1982';

EMPNO HIREDATE   ROUND(HIR TRUNC(HIR
----- -----
 7788 09-DEC-82 01-DEC-82 01-DEC-82
 7934 23-JAN-82 01-FEB-82 01-JAN-82
```

Conversion Functions



3-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Conversion Functions

In addition to Oracle datatypes, columns of tables in an Oracle8 database can be defined using ANSI, DB2, and SQL/DS datatypes. However, the Oracle Server internally converts such datatypes to Oracle8 datatypes.

In some cases, Oracle Server allows data of one datatype where it expects data of a different datatype. This is allowed when Oracle Server can automatically convert the data to the expected datatype. This datatype conversion can be done *implicitly* by Oracle Server or *explicitly* by the user.

Implicit datatype conversions work according to the rules explained in next two slides.

Explicit datatype conversions are done by using the conversion functions. Conversion functions convert a value from one datatype to another. Generally, the form of the function names follows the convention *datatype TO datatype*. The first datatype is the input datatype; the last datatype is the output.

Note: Although implicit datatype conversion is available, it is recommended that you do explicit datatype conversion to ensure reliability of your SQL statements.

Implicit Datatype Conversion

For assignments, the Oracle Server can automatically convert the following:

From	To
VARCHAR2 or CHAR	NUMBER
VARCHAR2 or CHAR	DATE
NUMBER	VARCHAR2
DATE	VARCHAR2

Implicit datatype Conversion

The assignment succeeds if the Oracle Server can convert the datatype of the value used in the assignment to that of the assignment target.

Implicit Datatype Conversion

For expression evaluation, the Oracle Server can automatically convert the following:

From	To
VARCHAR2 or CHAR	NUMBER
VARCHAR2 or CHAR	DATE

Implicit Datatype Conversion

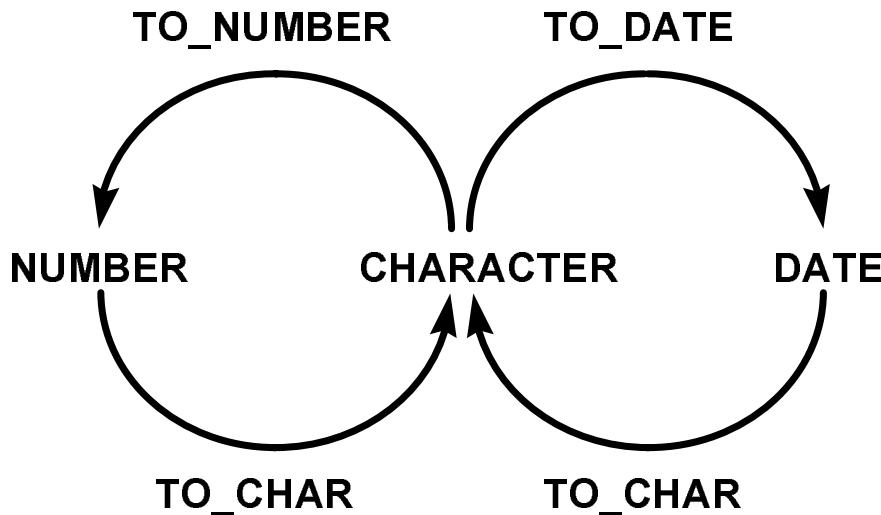
In general, the Oracle Server uses the rule for expression when a datatype conversion is needed in places not covered by a rule for assignment conversions.

Note: CHAR to NUMBER conversions succeed only if the character string represents a valid number. CHAR to DATE conversions succeed only if the character string has the default format DD-MON-YY.

Instructor Note

Implicit data conversion is not solely performed on the datatypes mentioned. Other implicit data conversions can also be done. For example, VARCHAR2 can be implicitly converted to ROWID.

Explicit Datatype Conversion



3-26

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

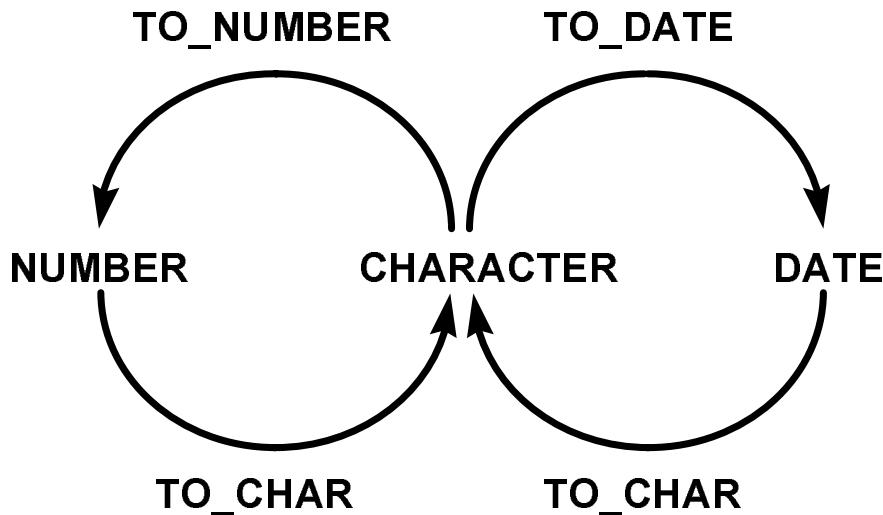
ORACLE®

Explicit Datatype Conversion

SQL provides three functions to convert a value from one datatype to another:

Function	Purpose
<code>TO_CHAR(number date,[<i>fmt</i>], [<i>nlsparams</i>])</code>	<p>Converts a number or date value to a VARCHAR2 character string with format model <i>fmt</i>.</p> <p>Number Conversion:</p> <p><i>nlsparams</i> parameter specifies the following characters, which are returned by number format elements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Decimal character• Group separator• Local currency symbol• International currency symbol <p>If <i>nlsparams</i> or any other parameter is omitted, this function uses the default parameter values for the session.</p>

Explicit Datatype Conversion



3-27

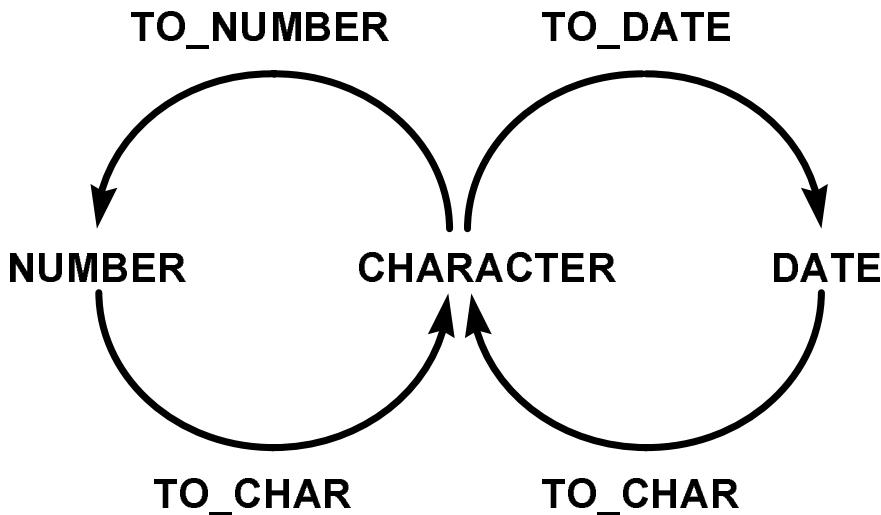
Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Explicit Datatype Conversion (continued)

Function	Purpose
TO_CHAR(<i>number date,[fmt],[nlsparms]</i>)	Date Conversion: The nlsparms parameter specifies the language in which month and day names and abbreviations are returned. If this parameter is omitted, this function uses the default date languages for the session.
TO_NUMBER(<i>char,[fmt],[nlsparms]</i>)	Converts a character string containing digits to a number in the format specified by the optional format model <i>fmt</i> . The nlsparms parameter has the same purpose in this function as in the TO_CHAR function for number conversion.
TO_DATE(<i>Char,[fmt],[nlsparms]</i>)	Converts a character string representing a date to a date value according to the <i>fmt</i> specified. If <i>fmt</i> is omitted, the format is DD-MON-YY. The nlsparms parameter has the same purpose in this function as in the TO_CHAR function for date conversion.

Explicit Datatype Conversion



3-28

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Explicit Datatype Conversion (continued)

Note: The list of functions mentioned in this lesson are a subset of the available conversion functions. For more information, see *Oracle8 Server SQL Reference, Release 8.0*, “Conversion Functions.”

Instructor Note

An additional conversion function is `CHR(number)` which returns the character having the binary equivalent of *number* as a `VARCHAR2` value in the database character set.

Let students know that the `CAST` function converts one built-in datatype or collection-typed value into another built-in datatype or collection-typed value. You can cast an unnamed operand (such as a date or the result set of a subquery) or a named collection (such as a varray or a nested table) into a type-compatible datatype or named collection. The `type_name` must be the name of a built-in datatype or collection type and the operand must be a built-in datatype or must evaluate to a collection value.

For example:

```
SQL> SELECT CAST ('1997-10-22' AS DATE) FROM DUAL;
SQL> SELECT * FROM t1 WHERE CAST (ROWID AS VARCHAR2) = '01234';
```

For more information, refer to:

Oracle8i SQL Reference, Release 8.1.5, “`CAST` Expressions.” and to:

<http://st-doc.us.oracle.com/8.0/815/server.815/a67779/expressi.htm#1017895>

TO_CHAR Function with Dates

```
TO_CHAR(date, 'fmt')
```

The format model:

- Must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case sensitive
- Can include any valid date format element
- Has an *fm* element to remove padded blanks or suppress leading zeros
- Is separated from the date value by a comma

3-29

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Displaying a Date in a Specific Format

Previously, all Oracle date values were displayed in the DD-MON-YY format. The TO_CHAR function allows you to convert a date from this default format to one specified by you.

Guidelines

- The format model must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case sensitive.
- The format model can include any valid date format element. Be sure to separate the date value from the format model by a comma.
- The names of days and months in the output are automatically padded with blanks.
- To remove padded blanks or to suppress leading zeros, use the fill mode *fm* element.
- You can resize the display width of the resulting character field with the SQL*Plus COLUMN command.
- The resultant column width is 80 characters by default.

```
SQL> SELECT empno, TO_CHAR(hiredate, 'MM/YY') Month_Hired  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE ename = 'BLAKE';
```

Elements of Date Format Model

YYYY	Full year in numbers
YEAR	Year spelled out
MM	Two-digit value for month
MONTH	Full name of the month
DY	Three-letter abbreviation of the day of the week
DAY	Full name of the day

3-30

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Sample Elements of Valid Date Formats

Element	Description
SCC or CC	Century; S prefixes BC date with -
Years in dates YYYY or SYYYY	Year; S prefixes BC date with -
YYY or YY or Y	Last three, two, or one digits of year
Y,YYY	Year with comma in this position
IYYY, IYY, IY, I	Four, three, two, or one digit year based on the ISO standard
SYEAR or YEAR	Year spelled out; S prefixes BC date with -
BC or AD	BC/AD indicator
B.C. or A.D.	BC/AD indicator with periods
Q	Quarter of year
MM	Month, two-digit value
MONTH	Name of month padded with blanks to length of nine characters
MON	Name of month, three-letter abbreviation
RM	Roman numeral month
WW or W	Week of year or month
DDD or DD or D	Day of year, month, or week
DAY	Name of day padded with blanks to length of 9 characters
DY	Name of day; three-letter abbreviation
J	Julian day; the number of days since 31 December 4713 BC

Instructor Note

Emphasize the format D, as the students will need it for practice 10.

Elements of Date Format Model

- Time elements format the time portion of the date.

HH24:MI:SS AM	15:45:32 PM
---------------	-------------

- Add character strings by enclosing them in double quotation marks.

DD "of" MONTH	12 of OCTOBER
---------------	---------------

- Number suffixes spell out numbers.

ddspth	fourteenth
--------	------------

3-31

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Time Formats

Use the formats listed in the following tables to display time information and literals and to change numerals to spelled numbers.

Element	Description
AM or PM	Meridian indicator
A.M. or P.M.	Meridian indicator with periods
HH or HH12 or HH24	Hour of day or hour (1–12) or hour (0–23)
MI	Minute (0–59)
SS	Second (0–59)
SSSS	Seconds past midnight (0–86399)

Other Formats

Element	Description
/ . ,	Punctuation is reproduced in the result
“of the”	Quoted string is reproduced in the result

Specifying Suffixes to Influence Number Display

Element	Description
TH	Ordinal number (for example, DDTH for 4TH)
SP	Spelled-out number (for example, DDSP for FOUR)
SPTH or THSP	Spelled-out ordinal numbers (for example, DDSPTH for FOURTH)

Using TO_CHAR Function with Dates

```
SQL> SELECT ename,
  2      TO_CHAR(hiredate, 'fmDD Month YYYY') HIREDATE
  3  FROM   emp;
```

ENAME	HIREDATE
KING	17 November 1981
BLAKE	1 May 1981
CLARK	9 June 1981
JONES	2 April 1981
MARTIN	28 September 1981
ALLEN	20 February 1981
...	
14 rows selected.	

3-32

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

TO_CHAR Function with Dates

The SQL statement on the slide displays the name and hire dates for all the employees. The hire date appears as 17 November 1981.

Example

Modify the slide example to display the dates in a format that appears as Seventh of February 1981 08:00:00 AM.

```
SQL> SELECT  ename,
  2      TO_CHAR(hiredate, 'fmDdspth "of" Month YYYY fmHH:MI:SS AM')
  3      HIREDATE
  4  FROM    emp;
```

ENAME	HIREDATE
KING	Seventeenth of November 1981 12:00:00 AM
BLAKE	First of May 1981 12:00:00 AM
...	
14 rows selected.	

Notice that the month follows the format model specified, in other words, the first letter is capitalized and the rest in lower case.

TO_CHAR Function with Numbers

`TO_CHAR(number, 'fmt')`

Use these formats with the TO_CHAR function to display a number value as a character:

9	Represents a number
0	Forces a zero to be displayed
\$	Places a floating dollar sign
L	Uses the floating local currency symbol
.	Prints a decimal point
,	Prints a thousand indicator

3-33

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

TO_CHAR Function with Numbers

When working with number values such as character strings, you should convert those numbers to the character datatype using the TO_CHAR function, which translates a value of NUMBER datatype to VARCHAR2 datatype. This technique is especially useful with concatenation.

Number Format Elements

If you are converting a number to character datatype, you can use the following elements:

Element	Description	Example	Result
9	Numeric position (number of 9s determine display width)	999999	1234
0	Display leading zeros	099999	001234
\$	Floating dollar sign	\$999999	\$1234
L	Floating local currency symbol	L999999	FF1234
.	Decimal point in position specified	999999.99	1234.00
,	Comma in position specified	999,999	1,234
MI	Minus signs to right (negative values)	999999MI	1234-
PR	Parenthesize negative numbers	999999PR	<1234>
EEEE	Scientific notation (format must specify four Es)	99.999EEEE	1.234E+03
V	Multiply by 10 <i>n</i> times (<i>n</i> = number of 9s after V)	9999V99	123400
B	Display zero values as blank, not 0	B9999.99	1234.00

Using TO_CHAR Function with Numbers

```
SQL> SELECT TO_CHAR(sal, '$99,999') SALARY
  2  FROM emp
  3 WHERE ename = 'SCOTT';
```

```
SALARY
```

```
-----
```

```
$3,000
```

3-34

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Guidelines

- The Oracle Server displays a string of pound signs (#) in place of a whole number whose digits exceed the number of digits provided in the format model.
- The Oracle Server rounds the stored decimal value to the number of decimal spaces provided in the format model.

TO_NUMBER and TO_DATE Functions

- Convert a character string to a number format using the TO_NUMBER function

```
TO_NUMBER(char[, 'fmt'])
```

- Convert a character string to a date format using the TO_DATE function

```
TO_DATE(char[, 'fmt'])
```

3-35

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

TO_NUMBER and TO_DATE Functions

You may want to convert a character string to either a number or a date. To accomplish this task, you use the TO_NUMBER or TO_DATE functions. The format model you choose will be based on the previously demonstrated format elements.

Example

Display the names and hire dates of all the employees who joined on February 22, 1981.

```
SQL> SELECT ename, hiredate
  2  FROM emp
  3 WHERE hiredate = TO_DATE('February 22, 1981', 'Month dd, YYYY');
```

ENAME	HIREDATE
WARD	22-FEB-81

RR Date Format

Current Year	Specified Date	RR Format	YY Format
1995	27-OCT-95	1995	1995
1995	27-OCT-17	2017	1917
2001	27-OCT-17	2017	2017
2001	27-OCT-95	1995	2095

		If the specified two-digit year is:	
		0–49	50–99
If two digits of the current year are:	0–49	The return date is in the current century	The return date is in the century before the current one
	50–99	The return date is in the century after the current one	The return date is in the current century

3-36

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The RR Date Format Element

The RR date format is similar to the YY element, but it allows you to specify different centuries. You can use the RR date format element instead of YY, so that the century of the return value varies according to the specified two-digit year and the last two digits of the current year. The table on the slide summarizes the behavior of the RR element.

Current Year	Given Date	Interpreted (RR)	Interpreted (YY)
1994	27-OCT-95	1995	1995
1994	27-OCT-17	2017	1917
2001	27-OCT-17	2017	2017

Instructor Note

RR is available in Oracle7, not Oracle Version 6. NLS parameters can be added to the `init.ora` file to set default date formats and language names and abbreviations. For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “Alter Session” clause.

Demo: `13hire.sql`

Purpose: To illustrate date format model elements.

NVL Function

Converts null to an actual value

- **Datatypes that can be used are date, character, and number.**
- **Datatypes must match**
 - **NVL(comm,0)**
 - **NVL(hiredate,'01-JAN-97')**
 - **NVL(job,'No Job Yet')**

3-37

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The NVL Function

To convert a null value to an actual value, use the NVL function.

Syntax

`NVL (expr1, expr2)`

where: `expr1` is the source value or expression that may contain null
`expr2` is the target value for converting null

You can use the NVL function to convert any datatype, but the return value is always the same as the datatype of `expr1`.

NVL Conversions for Various Datatypes

Data type	Conversion Example
NUMBER	<code>NVL(number_column,9)</code>
DATE	<code>NVL(date_column, '01-JAN-95')</code>
CHAR or VARCHAR2	<code>NVL(character_column, 'Unavailable')</code>

Using the NVL Function

```
SQL> SELECT ename, sal, comm, (sal*12)+NVL(comm,0)
2  FROM emp;
```

ENAME	SAL	COMM	(SAL*12)+NVL(COMM,0)
KING	5000		60000
BLAKE	2850		34200
CLARK	2450		29400
JONES	2975		35700
MARTIN	1250	1400	16400
ALLEN	1600	300	19500
...			
14 rows selected.			

3-38

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

NVL Function

To calculate the annual compensation of all employees, you need to multiply the monthly salary by 12 and then add the commission to it.

```
SQL> SELECT ename, sal, comm, (sal*12)+comm
2  FROM emp;
```

ENAME	SAL	COMM	(SAL*12)+COMM
KING	5000		
BLAKE	2850		
CLARK	2450		
JONES	2975		
MARTIN	1250	1400	16400
...			
14 rows selected.			

Notice that the annual compensation is calculated only for those employees who earn a commission. If any column value in an expression is null, the result is null. To calculate values for all employees, you must convert the null value to a number before applying the arithmetic operator. In the example on the slide, the NVL function is used to convert null values to zero.

DECODE Function

**Facilitates conditional inquiries by doing
the work of a CASE or IF-THEN-ELSE
statement**

```
DECODE(col/expression, search1, result1
       [, search2, result2, ...]
       [, default])
```

The DECODE Function

The DECODE function decodes an expression in a way similar to the IF-THEN-ELSE logic used in various languages. The DECODE function decodes *expression* after comparing it to each *search* value. If the expression is the same as *search*, *result* is returned.

If the default value is omitted, a null value is returned where a search value does not match any of the result values.

Using the DECODE Function

```
SQL> SELECT job, sal,
2        DECODE(job, 'ANALYST', SAL*1.1,
3                  'CLERK',    SAL*1.15,
4                  'MANAGER',  SAL*1.20,
5                  SAL)
6        REVISED_SALARY
7  FROM  emp;
```

JOB	SAL	REVISED_SALARY
PRESIDENT	5000	5000
MANAGER	2850	3420
MANAGER	2450	2940
...		
14 rows selected.		

3-40

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using the DECODE Function

In the SQL statement above, the value of JOB is decoded. If JOB is ANALYST, the salary increase is 10%; if JOB is CLERK, the salary increase is 15%; if JOB is MANAGER, the salary increase is 20%. For all other job roles, there is no increase in salary.

The same statement can be written as an IF-THEN-ELSE statement:

```
IF job = 'ANALYST'      THEN  sal = sal*1.1
IF job = 'CLERK'        THEN  sal = sal*1.15
IF job = 'MANAGER'      THEN  sal = sal*1.20
ELSE sal = sal
```

Using the DECODE Function

Display the applicable tax rate for each employee in department 30.

```
SQL> SELECT ename, sal,
2          DECODE(TRUNC(sal/1000, 0),
3                  0, 0.00,
4                  1, 0.09,
5                  2, 0.20,
6                  3, 0.30,
7                  4, 0.40,
8                  5, 0.42,
9                  6, 0.44,
10                 0.45) TAX_RATE
11  FROM    emp
12 WHERE   deptno = 30;
```

3-41

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Example

The slide shows another example using the DECODE function. In this example, we determine the tax rate for each employee in department 30 based on the monthly salary. The tax rates are as per the values mentioned in the following table.

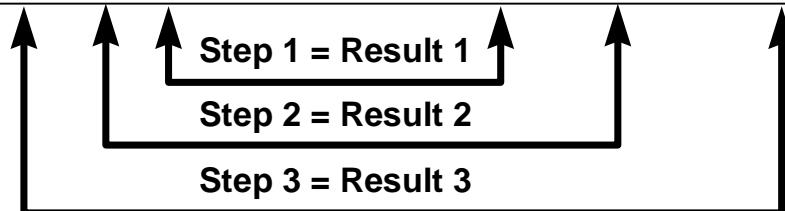
Monthly Salary Range	Rate
\$0.00 - 999.99	0%
\$1,000.00 - 1,999.99	9%
\$2,000.00 - 2,999.99	20%
\$3,000.00 - 3,999.99	30%
\$4,000.00 - 4,999.99	40%
\$5,000.00 - 5,999.99	42%
\$6,000.00 - 6,999.99	44%
\$7,000.00 or greater	45%

```
ENAME           SAL  TAX_RATE
-----  -----
BLAKE          2850     .2
MARTIN         1250     .09
ALLEN          1600     .09
TURNER         1500     .09
...
6 rows selected.
```

Nesting Functions

- Single-row functions can be nested to any level.
- Nested functions are evaluated from deepest level to the least-deep level.

F3 (F2 (F1 (col, arg1) , arg2) , arg3)



Nesting Functions

Single-row functions can be nested to any depth. Nested functions are evaluated from the innermost level to the outermost level. Some examples follow to show you the flexibility of these functions.

Nesting Functions

```
SQL> SELECT    ename,
  2          NVL(TO_CHAR(mgr) , 'No Manager')
  3      FROM      emp
  4      WHERE     mgr IS NULL;
```

ENAME	NVL(TO_CHAR(MGR) , 'NOMANAGER ')
KING	No Manager

3-43

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Nesting Functions (continued)

The slide example displays the head of the company, who has no manager. The evaluation of the SQL statement involves two steps:

1. Evaluate the inner function to convert a number value to a character string.
 - Result1 = TO_CHAR(mgr)
2. Evaluate the outer function to replace the null value with a text string.
 - NVL(Result1, 'No Manager')

The entire expression becomes the column heading because no column alias was given.

Example

Display the date of the next Friday that is six months from the hire date. The resulting date should appear as Friday, March 12th, 1982. Order the results by hire date.

```
SQL> SELECT    TO_CHAR(NEXT_DAY(ADD_MONTHS
  2          (hiredate, 6), 'FRIDAY'),
  3          'fmDay, Month ddth, YYYY')
  4          "Next 6 Month Review"
  5      FROM      emp
  6      ORDER BY  hiredate;
```

Instructor Note

Demo: 13nest.sql

Purpose: To illustrate nesting of several single row functions.

Summary

Use functions to do the following:

- **Perform calculations on data**
- **Modify individual data items**
- **Manipulate output for groups of rows**
- **Alter date formats for display**
- **Convert column datatypes**

Single-Row Functions

Single-row functions can be nested to any level. Single-row functions can manipulate the following:

- Character data: LOWER, UPPER, INITCAP, CONCAT, SUBSTR, INSTR, LENGTH
- Number data: ROUND, TRUNC, MOD
- Date data: MONTHS_BETWEEN, ADD_MONTHS, NEXT_DAY, LAST_DAY, ROUND, TRUNC
- Date values can also use arithmetic operators.
- Conversion functions can convert character, date, and numeric values: TO_CHAR, TO_DATE, TO_NUMBER

SYSDATE and DUAL

SYSDATE is a date function that returns the current date and time. It is customary to select SYSDATE from a dummy table called DUAL.

Practice Overview

- **Creating queries that require the use of numeric, character, and date functions**
- **Using concatenation with functions**
- **Writing case-insensitive queries to test the usefulness of character functions**
- **Performing calculations of years and months of service for an employee**
- **Determining the review date for an employee**

3-45

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Practice Overview

This practice is designed to give you a variety of exercises using different functions available for character, number, and date datatypes.

Remember that for nested functions, the results are evaluated from the innermost function to the outermost function.

Instructor Note

Practice exercise #6: Be sure to tell the students that their results may differ from the one provided, as SYSDATE is used in the exercise.

Instructor hint for practice exercise #10: The ORDER BY clause in the solution sorts on TO_CHAR(hiredate-1, 'd'). The format element 'd' returns a '1' for Sunday, '2' for Monday, and so forth. The expression 'hiredate-1' effectively "shifts" each hiredate to the previous day, so that an employee hired on a Monday appears to have been hired on Sunday. The TO_CHAR function will return a '1' for that employee and the result set will be sorted beginning with those employees hired on Monday.

Practice 3

1. Write a query to display the current date. Label the column Date.

```
Date  
-----  
28-OCT-97
```

2. Display the employee number, name, salary, and salary increase by 15% expressed as a whole number. Label the column New Salary. Save your SQL statement to a file named p3q2.sql.
3. Run your query in the file p3q2.sql.

EMPNO	ENAME	SAL	New Salary
7839	KING	5000	5750
7698	BLAKE	2850	3278
7782	CLARK	2450	2818
7566	JONES	2975	3421
7654	MARTIN	1250	1438
7499	ALLEN	1600	1840
7844	TURNER	1500	1725
7900	JAMES	950	1093
7521	WARD	1250	1438
7902	FORD	3000	3450
7369	SMITH	800	920
7788	SCOTT	3000	3450
7876	ADAMS	1100	1265
7934	MILLER	1300	1495

14 rows selected.

4. Modify your query p3q2.sql to add a column that will subtract the old salary from the new salary. Label the column Increase. Rerun your query.

EMPNO	ENAME	SAL	New Salary	Increase
7839	KING	5000	5750	750
7698	BLAKE	2850	3278	428
7782	CLARK	2450	2818	368
7566	JONES	2975	3421	446
7654	MARTIN	1250	1438	188
7499	ALLEN	1600	1840	240
7844	TURNER	1500	1725	225
7900	JAMES	950	1093	143
.

14 rows selected.

Practice 3 (continued)

5. Display the employee's name, hire date, and salary review date, which is the first Monday after six months of service. Label the column REVIEW. Format the dates to appear in the format similar to "Sunday, the Seventh of September, 1981."

ENAME	HIREDATE	REVIEW
KING	17-NOV-81	Monday, the Twenty-Fourth of May, 1982
BLAKE	01-MAY-81	Monday, the Second of November, 1981
CLARK	09-JUN-81	Monday, the Fourteenth of December, 1981
JONES	02-APR-81	Monday, the Fifth of October, 1981
MARTIN	28-SEP-81	Monday, the Twenty-Ninth of March, 1982
ALLEN	20-FEB-81	Monday, the Twenty-Fourth of August, 1981
TURNER	08-SEP-81	Monday, the Fifteenth of March, 1982
JAMES	03-DEC-81	Monday, the Seventh of June, 1982
WARD	22-FEB-81	Monday, the Twenty-Fourth of August, 1981
FORD	03-DEC-81	Monday, the Seventh of June, 1982
SMITH	17-DEC-80	Monday, the Twenty-Second of June, 1981
SCOTT	09-DEC-82	Monday, the Thirteenth of June, 1983
ADAMS	12-JAN-83	Monday, the Eighteenth of July, 1983
MILLER	23-JAN-82	Monday, the Twenty-Sixth of July, 1982

14 rows selected.

6. For each employee display the employee name and calculate the number of months between today and the date the employee was hired. Label the column MONTHS_WORKED. Order your results by the number of months employed. Round the number of months up to the closest whole number.

ENAME	MONTHS_WORKED
ADAMS	177
SCOTT	178
MILLER	188
JAMES	190
FORD	190
KING	191
MARTIN	192
TURNER	193
CLARK	196
BLAKE	197
JONES	198
WARD	199
ALLEN	199
SMITH	202

14 rows selected

Practice 3 (continued)

7. Write a query that produces the following for each employee:
<employee name> earns <salary> monthly but wants <3 times salary>. Label the column Dream Salaries.

```
Dream Salaries
-----
KING earns $5,000.00 monthly but wants $15,000.00.
BLAKE earns $2,850.00 monthly but wants $8,550.00.
CLARK earns $2,450.00 monthly but wants $7,350.00.
JONES earns $2,975.00 monthly but wants $8,925.00.
MARTIN earns $1,250.00 monthly but wants $3,750.00.
ALLEN earns $1,600.00 monthly but wants $4,800.00
TURNER earns $1,500.00 monthly but wants $4,500.00.
JAMES earns $950.00 monthly but wants $2,850.00.
WARD earns $1,250.00 monthly but wants $3,750.00.
FORD earns $3,000.00 monthly but wants $9,000.00.
SMITH earns $800.00 monthly but wants $2,400.00.
SCOTT earns $3,000.00 monthly but wants $9,000.00.
ADAMS earns $1,100.00 monthly but wants $3,300.00
MILLER earns $1,300.00 monthly but wants $3,900.00.
14 rows selected.
```

If you have time, complete the following exercises:

8. Create a query to display name and salary for all employees. Format the salary to be 15 characters long, left-padded with \$. Label the column SALARY.

```
ENAME      SALARY
-----
SMITH     $$$$$$$$$800
ALLEN    $$$$$$$$$1600
WARD      $$$$$$$$$1250
JONES     $$$$$$$$$2975
MARTIN   $$$$$$$$$1250
BLAKE     $$$$$$$$$2850
CLARK     $$$$$$$$$2450
SCOTT     $$$$$$$$$3000
KING      $$$$$$$$$5000
TURNER   $$$$$$$$$1500
ADAMS     $$$$$$$$$1100
JAMES     $$$$$$$$$950
FORD      $$$$$$$$$3000
MILLER   $$$$$$$$$1300
14 rows selected.
```

Practice 3 (continued)

9. Write a query that will display the employee's name with the first letter capitalized and all other letters lowercase and the length of their name, for all employees whose name starts with J, A, or M. Give each column an appropriate label.

Name	Length
Jones	5
Martin	6
Allen	5
James	5
Adams	5
Miller	6

6 rows selected.

10. Display the name, hire date, and day of the week on which the employee started. Label the column DAY. Order the results by the day of the week starting with Monday.

ENAME	HIREDATE	DAY
MARTIN	28-SEP-81	MONDAY
CLARK	09-JUN-81	TUESDAY
KING	17-NOV-81	TUESDAY
TURNER	08-SEP-81	TUESDAY
SMITH	17-DEC-80	WEDNESDAY
ADAMS	12-JAN-83	WEDNESDAY
JONES	02-APR-81	THURSDAY
FORD	03-DEC-81	THURSDAY
SCOTT	09-DEC-82	THURSDAY
JAMES	03-DEC-81	THURSDAY
ALLEN	20-FEB-81	FRIDAY
BLAKE	01-MAY-81	FRIDAY
MILLER	23-JAN-82	SATURDAY
WARD	22-FEB-81	SUNDAY

14 rows selected.

Practice 3 (continued)

If you want extra challenge, complete the following exercises:

11. Create a query that will display the employee name and commission amount. If the employee does not earn commission, put “No Commission.” Label the column COMM.

ENAME	COMM
SMITH	No Commission
ALLEN	300
WARD	500
JONES	No Commission
MARTIN	1400
BLAKE	No Commission
CLARK	No Commission
SCOTT	No Commission
KING	No Commission
TURNER	0
ADAMS	No Commission
JAMES	No Commission
FORD	No Commission
MILLER	No Commission

14 rows selected.

12. Create a query that displays the employees’ names and indicates the amounts of their salaries through asterisks. Each asterisk signifies a hundred dollars. Sort the data in descending order of salary. Label the column EMPLOYEE_AND_THEIR_SALARIES.

EMPLOYEE_AND_THEIR_SALARIES

KING	*****
FORD	*****
SCOTT	*****
JONES	*****
BLAKE	*****
CLARK	*****
ALLEN	*****
TURNER	*****
MILLER	*****
MARTIN	*****
WARD	*****
ADAMS	*****
JAMES	*****
SMITH	*****

14 rows selected.

Practice 3 (continued)

If you want an extra challenge, complete the following exercise:

13. Write a query that displays the grade of all employees based on the value of the column JOB, as per the table shown below:

JOB	GRADE
PRESIDENT	A
MANAGER	B
ANALYST	C
SALESMAN	D
CLERK	E
None of the above	O

JOB	GRADE
CLERK	E
SALESMAN	D
SALESMAN	D
MANAGER	B
SALESMAN	D
MANAGER	B
MANAGER	B
ANALYST	C
PRESIDENT	A
SALESMAN	D
CLERK	E
CLERK	E
ANALYST	C
CLERK	E

14 rows selected.

4

Displaying Data from Multiple Tables

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	40 minutes	Lecture
	50 minutes	Practice
	90 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- Write **SELECT statements to access data from more than one table using equality and nonequality joins**
- View data that generally does not meet a **join condition by using outer joins**
- Join a table to itself

Lesson Aim

This lesson covers how to obtain data from more than one table, using the different methods available.

Obtaining Data from Multiple Tables

EMP

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO
7839	KING	10
7698	BLAKE	30
...		
7934	MILLER	10

DEPT

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

EMPNO	DEPTNO	LOC
7839	10	NEW YORK
7698	30	CHICAGO
7782	10	NEW YORK
7566	20	DALLAS
7654	30	CHICAGO
7499	30	CHICAGO
...		

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

4-3

Data from Multiple Tables

Sometimes you need to use data from more than one table. In the slide example, the report displays data from two separate tables.

- EMPNO exists in the EMP table.
- DEPTNO exists in both the EMP and DEPT tables.
- LOC exists in the DEPT table.

To produce the report, you need to link EMP and DEPT tables and access data from both of them.

Instructor Note

In the slide, the DEPTNO column can come from either the EMP or the DEPT table.

What Is a Join?

Use a join to query data from more than one table.

```
SELECT    table1.column, table2.column  
FROM      table1, table2  
WHERE     table1.column1 = table2.column2;
```

- **Write the join condition in the WHERE clause.**
- **Prefix the column name with the table name when the same column name appears in more than one table.**

4-4

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Defining Joins

When data from more than one table in the database is required, a *join* condition is used. Rows in one table can be joined to rows in another table according to common values existing in corresponding columns, that is, usually primary and foreign key columns.

To display data from two or more related tables, write a simple join condition in the WHERE clause. In the syntax:

<i>table1.column</i>	denotes the table and column from which data is retrieved
<i>table1.column1</i> = <i>table2.column2</i>	is the condition that joins (or relates) the tables together

Guidelines

- When writing a SELECT statement that joins tables, precede the column name with the table name for clarity and to enhance database access.
- If the same column name appears in more than one table, the column name must be prefixed with the table name.
- To join n tables together, you need a minimum of $(n-1)$ join conditions. Therefore, to join four tables, a minimum of three joins are required. This rule may not apply if your table has a concatenated primary key, in which case more than one column is required to uniquely identify each row.

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference Manual*, Release 8, “SELECT.”

Cartesian Product

- A **Cartesian product is formed when:**
 - A **join condition is omitted**
 - A **join condition is invalid**
 - All rows in the first table are joined to all rows in the second table
- To avoid a **Cartesian product, always include a valid join condition in a WHERE clause.**

4-5

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Cartesian Product

When a join condition is invalid or omitted completely, the result is a *Cartesian product* in which all combinations of rows will be displayed. All rows in the first table are joined to all rows in the second table.

A Cartesian product tends to generate a large number of rows, and its result is rarely useful. You should always include a valid join condition in a WHERE clause, unless you have a specific need to combine all rows from all tables.

Instructor Note

Cartesian product is useful for some tests when you need to generate a large number of rows to simulate a reasonable amount of data.

Generating a Cartesian Product

EMP (14 rows)

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO
7839	KING	10
7698	BLAKE	30
...		
7934	MILLER	10

DEPT (4 rows)

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

“Cartesian
product: →
 $14 \times 4 = 56$ rows”

ENAME	DNAME
KING	ACCOUNTING
BLAKE	ACCOUNTING
...	
KING	RESEARCH
BLAKE	RESEARCH
...	
	56 rows selected.

4-6

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Cartesian Product (continued)

A Cartesian product is generated if a join condition is omitted. The example on the slide displays employee name and department name from EMP and DEPT tables. Because no WHERE clause has been specified, all rows (14 rows) from the EMP table are joined with all rows (4 rows) in the DEPT table, thereby generating 56 rows in the output.

```
SQL> SELECT ename, dname
  2  FROM emp, dept;
```

ENAME	DNAME
KING	ACCOUNTING
BLAKE	ACCOUNTING
...	
KING	RESEARCH
BLAKE	RESEARCH
...	
	56 rows selected.

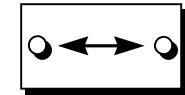
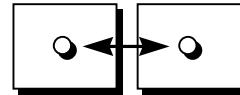
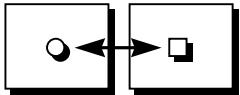
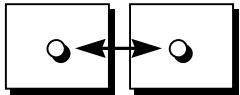
Instructor Note

Demo: 14cart.sql

Purpose: To illustrate executing a Cartesian product.

Types of Joins

Equijoin Non-equijoin Outer join Self join



Types of Joins

There are two main types of join conditions:

- Equijoins
- Non-equijoins

Additional join methods include the following:

- Outer joins
- Self joins
- Set operators

Note: Set operators are not covered in this course. They are covered in another SQL course.

Instructor Note

Do not get into details of all the types of joins. Explain each join one by one as is done in the following slides.

What Is an Equijoin?

EMP			DEPT		
EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO	DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
7839	KING	10	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
7698	BLAKE	30	30	SALES	CHICAGO
7782	CLARK	10	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
7566	JONES	20	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
7654	MARTIN	30	30	SALES	CHICAGO
7499	ALLEN	30	30	SALES	CHICAGO
7844	TURNER	30	30	SALES	CHICAGO
7900	JAMES	30	30	SALES	CHICAGO
7521	WARD	30	30	SALES	CHICAGO
7902	FORD	20	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
7369	SMITH	20	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
...			...		
14 rows selected.			14 rows selected.		

Foreign key Primary key

4-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Equijoins

To determine the name of an employee's department, you compare the value in the DEPTNO column in the EMP table with the DEPTNO values in the DEPT table. The relationship between the EMP and DEPT tables is an *equijoin*—that is, values in the DEPTNO column on both tables must be equal. Frequently, this type of join involves primary and foreign key complements.

Note: Equijoins are also called *simple joins* or *inner joins*.

Instructor Note

Explain the use of decision matrix for simplifying writing joins. For example, if you want to display the name and department number of all the employees who are in the same department as Smith, you can start by making the following decision tree:

Columns to Display	Originating Table	Condition
ename	emp	ename = 'SMITH'
dname	dept	emp.deptno = dept.deptno

Now the SQL statement can be easily formulated by looking at the decision matrix. The first column gives the column list in the SELECT statement, the second column gives the tables for the FROM clause, and the third column gives the condition for the WHERE clause.

Retrieving Records with Equijoins

```
SQL> SELECT emp.empno, emp.ename, emp.deptno,
2          dept.deptno, dept.loc
3    FROM   emp, dept
4   WHERE  emp.deptno=dept.deptno;
```

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO	DEPTNO	LOC
7839	KING	10	10	NEW YORK
7698	BLAKE	30	30	CHICAGO
7782	CLARK	10	10	NEW YORK
7566	JONES	20	20	DALLAS
...				
14 rows selected.				

4-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Retrieving Records with Equijoins

In the slide example:

- The SELECT clause specifies the column names to retrieve:
 - employee name, employee number, and department number, which are columns in the EMP table
 - department number, department name, and location, which are columns in the DEPT table
- The FROM clause specifies the two tables that the database must access:
 - EMP table
 - DEPT table
- The WHERE clause specifies how the tables are to be joined:
EMP.DEPTNO=DEPT.DEPTNO

Because the DEPTNO column is common to both tables, it must be prefixed by the table name to avoid ambiguity.

Qualifying Ambiguous Column Names

- Use table prefixes to qualify column names that are in multiple tables.
- Improve performance by using table prefixes.
- Distinguish columns that have identical names but reside in different tables by using column aliases.

4-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Qualifying Ambiguous Column Names

You need to qualify the names of the columns in the WHERE clause with the table name to avoid ambiguity. Without the table prefixes, the DEPTNO column could be from either the DEPT table or the EMP table. It is necessary to add the table prefix to execute your query.

If there are no common column names between the two tables, there is no need to qualify the columns. However, you will gain improved performance by using the table prefix because you tell the Oracle Server exactly where to go to find columns.

The requirement to qualify ambiguous column names is also applicable to columns that may be ambiguous in other clauses, such as the SELECT clause or the ORDER BY clause.

Instructor Note

Demo: 14loc.sql

Purpose: To illustrate a SELECT clause with no aliases.

Additional Search Conditions Using the AND Operator

EMP

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO
7839	KING	10
7698	BLAKE	30
7782	CLARK	10
7566	JONES	20
7654	MARTIN	30
7499	ALLEN	30
7844	TURNER	30
7900	JAMES	30
7521	WARD	30
7902	FORD	20
7369	SMITH	20

14 rows selected.

DEPT

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
30	SALES	CHICAGO
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS

14 rows selected.

Additional Search Conditions

In addition to the join, you may have criteria for your WHERE clause. For example, to display employee King's employee number, name, department number, and department location, you need an additional condition in the WHERE clause.

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, emp.deptno, loc
  2  FROM   emp, dept
  3 WHERE  emp.deptno = dept.deptno
  4 AND    INITCAP(ename) = 'King';
```

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO	LOC
7839	KING	10	NEW YORK

Using Table Aliases

Simplify queries by using table aliases.

```
SQL> SELECT emp.empno,      emp.ename,  emp.deptno,
2          dept.deptno,  dept.loc
3  FROM    emp,  dept
4 WHERE   emp.deptno=dept.deptno;
```

```
SQL> SELECT e.empno,    e.ename,  e.deptno,
2          d.deptno,  d.loc
3  FROM    emp e,    dept d
4 WHERE   e.deptno= d.deptno;
```

4-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Table Aliases

Qualifying column names with table names can be very time consuming, particularly if table names are lengthy. You can use table *aliases* instead of table names. Just as a column alias gives a column another name, a table alias gives a table another name. Table aliases help to keep SQL code smaller, therefore using less memory.

Notice how table aliases are identified in the FROM clause in the example. The table name is specified in full, followed by a space and then the table alias. The EMP table has been given an alias of E, whereas the DEPT table has an alias of D.

Guidelines

- Table aliases can be up to 30 characters in length, but the shorter they are the better.
- If a table alias is used for a particular table name in the FROM clause, then that table alias must be substituted for the table name throughout the SELECT statement.
- Table aliases should be meaningful.
- The table alias is valid only for the current SELECT statement.

Instructor Note

Explain that it is always recommended to use meaningful alias names.

Joining More Than Two Tables

CUSTOMER

NAME	CUSTID
JOCKSPORTS	100
TKB SPORT SHOP	101
VOLLYRITE	102
JUST TENNIS	103
K+T SPORTS	105
SHAPE UP	106
WOMENS SPORTS	107
...	...

9 rows selected.

ORD

CUSTID	ORDID
101	610
102	611
104	612
106	601
102	602
106	602
106	602

21 rows

ITEM

ORDID	ITEMID
610	3
611	1
612	1
601	1
602	1

64 rows selected.

4-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Additional Search Conditions

Sometimes you may need to join more than two tables. For example, to display the name, the orders placed, the item numbers, the total for each item, and the total for each order for customer TKB SPORT SHOP, you will have to join the CUSTOMER, ORD, and ITEM tables.

```
SQL> SELECT c.name, o.ordid, i.itemid, i.itemtot, o.total
  2  FROM customer c, ord o, item i
  3 WHERE c.custid = o.custid
  4 AND o.ordid = i.ordid
  5 AND c.name = 'TKB SPORT SHOP';
```

NAME	ORDID	ITEMID	ITEMTOT	TOTAL
TKB SPORT SHOP	610	3	58	101.4
TKB SPORT SHOP	610	1	35	101.4
TKB SPORT SHOP	610	2	8.4	101.4

Non-EquiJoins

EMP

EMPNO	ENAME	SAL
7839	KING	5000
7698	BLAKE	2850
7782	CLARK	2450
7566	JONES	2975
7654	MARTIN	1250
7499	ALLEN	1600
7844	TURNER	1500
7900	JAMES	950
...		
14 rows selected.		

SALGRADE

GRADE	LOSAL	HISAL
1	700	1200
2	1201	1400
3	1401	2000
4	2001	3000
5	3001	9999

“salary in the EMP table is between low salary and high salary in the SALGRADE table”

Non-EquiJoins

The relationship between the EMP table and the SALGRADE table is a non-equijoin, meaning that no column in the EMP table corresponds directly to a column in the SALGRADE table. The relationship between the two tables is that the SAL column in the EMP table is between the LOSAL and HISAL column of the SALGRADE table. The relationship is obtained using an operator other than equal (=).

Retrieving Records with Non-Equiijoins

```
SQL> SELECT e.ename, e.sal, s.grade
  2  FROM emp e, salgrade s
  3 WHERE e.sal
  4 BETWEEN s.losal AND s.hisal;
```

ENAME	SAL	GRADE
JAMES	950	1
SMITH	800	1
ADAMS	1100	1
...		
14 rows selected.		

4-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Non-Equiijoins (continued)

The slide example creates a non-equijoin to evaluate an employee's salary grade. The salary must be *between* any pair of the low and high salary ranges.

It is important to note that all employees appear exactly once when this query is executed. No employee is repeated in the list. There are two reasons for this:

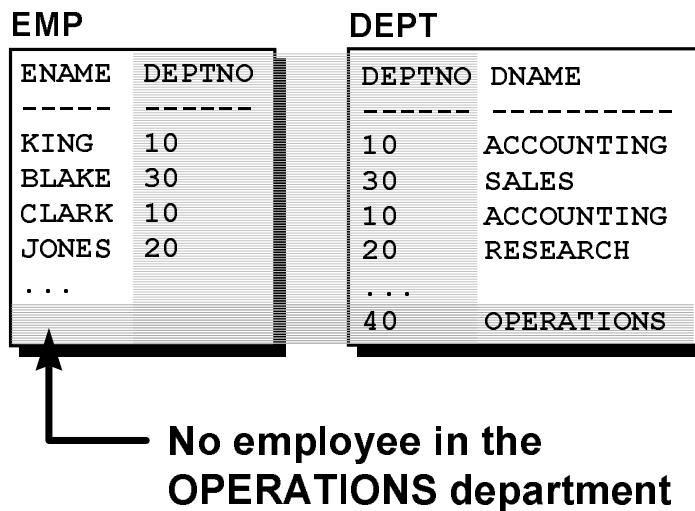
- None of the rows in the salary grade table contain grades that overlap. That is, the salary value for an employee can only lie between the low salary and high salary values of one of the rows in the salary grade table.
- All of the employees' salaries lie within the limits provided by the salary grade table. That is, no employee earns less than the lowest value contained in the LOSAL column or more than the highest value contained in the HISAL column.

Note: Other operators such as `<=` and `>=` could be used, but `BETWEEN` is the simplest. Remember to specify the low value first and the high value last when using `BETWEEN`. Table aliases have been specified for performance reasons, not because of possible ambiguity.

Instructor Note

Explain that `BETWEEN ... AND ...` are actually translated by Oracle server to a pair of conditions (`a >= lower limit` and `a <= higher limit`) and `IN (...)` is translated by Oracle server to a set of `OR` conditions (`a = value1 OR a = value2 OR a = value3`). So using `BETWEEN ... AND ... , IN(...)` has no performance benefits and can be used for logical simplicity.

Outer Joins



4-16

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Returning Records with No Direct Match with Outer Joins

If a row does not satisfy a join condition, the row will not appear in the query result. For example, in the equijoin condition of EMP and DEPT tables, department OPERATIONS does not appear because no one works in that department.

```
SQL> SELECT e.ename, e.deptno, d.dname
  2  FROM   emp e,    dept d
  3 WHERE  e.deptno = d.deptno;

ENAME      DEPTNO DNAME
-----  -----
KING          10 ACCOUNTING
BLAKE         30 SALES
CLARK         10 ACCOUNTING
JONES         20 RESEARCH
...
ALLEN          30 SALES
TURNER         30 SALES
JAMES          30 SALES
...
14 rows selected.
```

Outer Joins

- You use an outer join to also see rows that do not usually meet the join condition.
- Outer join operator is the plus sign (+).

```
SELECT table1.column, table2.column  
FROM   table1, table2  
WHERE  table1.column(+) = table2.column;
```

```
SELECT table1.column, table2.column  
FROM   table1, table2  
WHERE  table1.column = table2.column(+);
```

4-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Returning Records with No Direct Match with Outer Joins

The missing row(s) can be returned if an *outer join* operator is used in the join condition. The operator is a plus sign enclosed in parentheses (+), and it is placed on the “side” of the join that is *deficient in information*. This operator has the effect of creating one or more null rows, to which one or more rows from the nondeficient table can be joined.

In the syntax:

<i>table1.column</i> =	is the condition that joins (or relates) the tables together.
<i>table2.column</i> (+)	is the outer join symbol, which can be placed on either side of the WHERE clause condition, but not on both sides (Place the outer join symbol following the name of the column in the table without the matching rows.)

Instructor Note

Demo: 14ejoin.sql

Purpose: To illustrate an equijoin leading to an outer join.

Using Outer Joins

```
SQL> SELECT e.ename, d.deptno, d.dname
  2  FROM emp e, dept d
  3 WHERE e.deptno(+) = d.deptno
  4 ORDER BY e.deptno;
```

ENAME	DEPTNO	DNAME
KING	10	ACCOUNTING
CLARK	10	ACCOUNTING
...		
		40 OPERATIONS
15 rows selected.		

4-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Returning Records with No Direct Match with Outer Joins (continued)

The slide example displays numbers and names for all the departments. The OPERATIONS department, which does not have any employees, is also displayed.

Outer Join Restrictions

- The outer join operator can appear on only *one* side of the expression—the side that has information missing. It returns those rows from one table that have no direct match in the other table.
- A condition involving an outer join cannot use the IN operator or be linked to another condition by the OR operator.

Instructor Note

Demo: 14ojoin.sql

Purpose: To illustrate an outer join.

Self Joins

EMP (WORKER)

EMPNO	ENAME	MGR
7839	KING	
7698	BLAKE	7839
7782	CLARK	7839
7566	JONES	7839
7654	MARTIN	7698
7499	ALLEN	7698

EMP (MANAGER)

EMPNO	ENAME
7839	KING
7839	KING
7839	KING
7698	BLAKE
7698	BLAKE

“MGR in the WORKER table is equal to EMPNO in the MANAGER table”

Joining a Table to Itself

Sometimes you need to join a table to itself. To find the name of each employee's manager, you need to join the EMP table to itself, or perform a self join. For example, to find the name of Blake's manager, you need to:

- Find Blake in the EMP table by looking at the ENAME column.
- Find the manager number for Blake by looking at the MGR column. Blake's manager number is 7839.
- Find the name of the manager with EMPNO 7839 by looking at the ENAME column. King's employee number is 7839, so King is Blake's manager.

In this process, you look in the table twice. The first time you look in the table to find Blake in the ENAME column and MGR value of 7839. The second time you look in the EMPNO column to find 7839 and the ENAME column to find King.

Instructor Note

Show the data from the EMP table and point out how each manager is also an employee.

Joining a Table to Itself

```
SQL> SELECT worker.ename||' works for'||manager.ename  
2   FROM   emp worker, emp manager  
3  WHERE  worker.mgr = manager.empno;
```

```
WORKER.ENAME || 'WORKSFOR' || MANAG  
-----  
BLAKE works for KING  
CLARK works for KING  
JONES works for KING  
MARTIN works for BLAKE  
...  
13 rows selected.
```

4-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Joining a Table to Itself (continued)

The slide example joins the EMP table to itself. To simulate two tables in the FROM clause, there are two aliases, namely WORKER and MANAGER, for the same table, EMP.

In this example, the WHERE clause contains the join that means “where a worker’s manager number matches the employee number for the manager.”

Instructor Note

Point out the following to the students:

- The column heading in the result of the query on the slide seems meaningless. A meaningful column alias should have been used instead.
- There are only 13 rows in the output, but there are 14 rows in the EMP table. This occurs because employee King, who is the president, does not have a manager.

Summary

```
SELECT      table1.column, table2.column  
FROM        table1, table2  
WHERE       table1.column1 = table2.column2;
```

Equijoin Non-equijoin Outer join Self join



4-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Summary

There are multiple ways to join tables. The common thread, though, is that you want to link them through a condition in the WHERE clause. The method you choose will be based on the required result and the data structures that you are using.

```
SELECT      table1.column, table2.column  
FROM        table1, table2  
WHERE       table1.column1 = table2.column2;
```

Practice Overview

- **Joining tables using an equijoin**
- **Performing outer and self joins**
- **Adding conditions**

4-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Practice Overview

This practice is intended to give you practical experience in extracting data from more than one table. You will be required to join and restrict rows in the WHERE clause.

Practice 4

1. Write a query to display the name, department number, and department name for all employees.

ENAME	DEPTNO	DNAME
KING	10	ACCOUNTING
BLAKE	30	SALES
CLARK	10	ACCOUNTING
JONES	20	RESEARCH
MARTIN	30	SALES
ALLEN	30	SALES
TURNER	30	SALES
JAMES	30	SALES
WARD	30	SALES
FORD	20	RESEARCH
SMITH	20	RESEARCH
SCOTT	20	RESEARCH
ADAMS	20	RESEARCH
MILLER	10	ACCOUNTING

14 rows selected.

2. Create a unique listing of all jobs that are in department 30. Include the location of department 30 in the output.

JOB	LOC
CLERK	CHICAGO
MANAGER	CHICAGO
SALESMAN	CHICAGO

3. Write a query to display the employee name, department name, and location of all employees who earn a commission.

ENAME	DNAME	LOC
ALLEN	SALES	CHICAGO
WARD	SALES	CHICAGO
MARTIN	SALES	CHICAGO
TURNER	SALES	CHICAGO

Practice 4 (continued)

4. Display the employee name and department name for all employees who have an *A* in their name. Save your SQL statement in a file called p4q4.sql.

ENAME	DNAME
BLAKE	SALES
CLARK	ACCOUNTING
MARTIN	SALES
ALLEN	SALES
JAMES	SALES
WARD	SALES
ADAMS	RESEARCH

7 rows selected.

5. Write a query to display the name, job, department number, and department name for all employees who work in DALLAS.

ENAME	JOB	DEPTNO	DNAME
SMITH	CLERK	20	RESEARCH
ADAMS	CLERK	20	RESEARCH
FORD	ANALYST	20	RESEARCH
SCOTT	ANALYST	20	RESEARCH
JONES	MANAGER	20	RESEARCH

6. Display the employee name and employee number along with their manager's name and manager number. Label the columns Employee, Emp#, Manager, and Mgr#, respectively. Save your SQL statement in a file called p4q6.sql.

Employee	Emp#	Manager	Mgr#
SCOTT	7788	JONES	7566
FORD	7902	JONES	7566
ALLEN	7499	BLAKE	7698
WARD	7521	BLAKE	7698
JAMES	7900	BLAKE	7698
TURNER	7844	BLAKE	7698
MARTIN	7654	BLAKE	7698
MILLER	7934	CLARK	7782
ADAMS	7876	SCOTT	7788
JONES	7566	KING	7839
CLARK	7782	KING	7839
BLAKE	7698	KING	7839
SMITH	7369	FORD	7902

13 rows selected.

Practice 4 (continued)

7. Modify p4q6.sql to display all employees including King, who has no manager.
Resave as p4q7.sql. Run p4q7.sql.

Employee	Emp#	Manager	Mgr#
SCOTT	7788	JONES	7566
FORD	7902	JONES	7566
ALLEN	7499	BLAKE	7698
WARD	7521	BLAKE	7698
JAMES	7900	BLAKE	7698
TURNER	7844	BLAKE	7698
MARTIN	7654	BLAKE	7698
MILLER	7934	CLARK	7782
ADAMS	7876	SCOTT	7788
JONES	7566	KING	7839
CLARK	7782	KING	7839
BLAKE	7698	KING	7839
SMITH	7369	FORD	7902
KING	7839		

14 rows selected.

If you have time, complete the following exercises:

8. Create a query that will display the employee name, department number, and all the employees that work in the same department as a given employee. Give each column an appropriate label.

DEPARTMENT	EMPLOYEE	COLLEAGUE
10	CLARK	KING
10	CLARK	MILLER
10	KING	CLARK
10	KING	MILLER
10	MILLER	CLARK
10	MILLER	KING
20	ADAMS	FORD
20	ADAMS	JONES
20	ADAMS	SCOTT
20	ADAMS	SMITH
20	FORD	ADAMS
20	FORD	JONES
20	FORD	SCOTT
		...

56 rows selected.

Practice 4 (continued)

9. Show the structure of the SALGRADE table. Create a query that will display the name, job, department name, salary, and grade for all employees.

Name	Null?	Type			
GRADE		NUMBER			
LOSAL		NUMBER			
HISAL		NUMBER			
ENAME	JOB	DNAME	SAL	GRADE	
MILLER	CLERK	ACCOUNTING	1300	2	
CLARK	MANAGER	ACCOUNTING	2450	4	
KING	PRESIDENT	ACCOUNTING	5000	5	
SMITH	CLERK	RESEARCH	800	1	
SCOTT	ANALYST	RESEARCH	3000	4	
FORD	ANALYST	RESEARCH	3000	4	
ADAMS	CLERK	RESEARCH	1100	1	
JONES	MANAGER	RESEARCH	2975	4	
JAMES	CLERK	SALES	950	1	
BLAKE	MANAGER	SALES	2850	4	
TURNER	SALESMAN	SALES	1500	3	
ALLEN	SALESMAN	SALES	1600	3	
WARD	SALESMAN	SALES	1250	2	
MARTIN	SALESMAN	SALES	1250	2	
14 rows selected.					

If you want extra challenge, complete the following exercises:

10. Create a query to display the name and hire date of any employee hired after employee Blake.

ENAME	HIREDATE
KING	17-NOV-81
CLARK	09-JUN-81
MARTIN	28-SEP-81
TURNER	08-SEP-81
JAMES	03-DEC-81
FORD	03-DEC-81
SCOTT	09-DEC-82
ADAMS	12-JAN-83
MILLER	23-JAN-82
9 rows selected.	

Practice 4 (continued)

11. Display all employees' names and hire dates along with their manager's name and hire date for all employees who were hired before their managers. Label the columns Employee, Emp Hiredate, Manager, and Mgr Hiredate, respectively.

Employee	Emp Hiredate	Manager	Mgr Hiredate
ALLEN	20-FEB-81	BLAKE	01-MAY-81
WARD	22-FEB-81	BLAKE	01-MAY-81
JONES	02-APR-81	KING	17-NOV-81
CLARK	09-JUN-81	KING	17-NOV-81
BLAKE	01-MAY-81	KING	17-NOV-81
SMITH	17-DEC-80	FORD	03-DEC-81

6 rows selected.

5

Aggregating Data Using Group Functions

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	35 minutes	Lecture
	40 minutes	Practice
	75 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **Identify the available group functions**
- **Describe the use of group functions**
- **Group data using the GROUP BY clause**
- **Include or exclude grouped rows by using the HAVING clause**

Lesson Aim

This lesson further addresses functions. It focuses on obtaining summary information, such as averages, for groups of rows. It discusses how to group rows in a table into smaller sets and how to specify search criteria for groups of rows.

What Are Group Functions?

Group functions operate on sets of rows to give one result per group.

EMP

DEPTNO	SAL
10	2450
10	5000
10	1300
20	800
20	1100
20	3000
20	3000
20	2975
30	1600
30	2850
30	1250
30	950
30	1500
30	1250

“maximum salary in the EMP table”

MAX (SAL)
5000

Group Functions

Unlike single-row functions, group functions operate on sets of rows to give one result per group. These sets may be the whole table or the table split into groups.

Types of Group Functions

- **AVG**
- **COUNT**
- **MAX**
- **MIN**
- **STDDEV**
- **SUM**
- **VARIANCE**

5-4

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Group Functions (continued)

Each of the functions accepts an argument. The following table identifies the options that you can use in the syntax:

Function	Description
AVG([DISTINCT ALL] <i>n</i>)	Average value of <i>n</i> , ignoring null values
COUNT({* [DISTINCT ALL] <i>expr</i> })	Number of rows, where <i>expr</i> evaluates to something other than null (Count all selected rows using *, including duplicates and rows with nulls.)
MAX([DISTINCT ALL] <i>expr</i>)	Maximum value of <i>expr</i> , ignoring null values
MIN([DISTINCT ALL] <i>expr</i>)	Minimum value of <i>expr</i> , ignoring null values
STDDEV([DISTINCT ALL] <i>x</i>)	Standard deviation of <i>n</i> , ignoring null values
SUM([DISTINCT ALL] <i>n</i>)	Sum values of <i>n</i> , ignoring null values
VARIANCE([DISTINCT ALL] <i>x</i>)	Variance of <i>n</i> , ignoring null values

Using Group Functions

```
SELECT      [column,] group_function(column)
FROM        table
[WHERE       condition]
[GROUP BY   column]
[ORDER BY   column] ;
```

Guidelines for Using Group Functions

- DISTINCT makes the function consider only nonduplicate values; ALL makes it consider every value including duplicates. The default is ALL and therefore does not need to be specified.
- The datatypes for the arguments may be CHAR, VARCHAR2, NUMBER, or DATE where *expr* is listed.
- All group functions except COUNT(*) ignore null values. To substitute a value for null values, use the NVL function.
- The Oracle Server implicitly sorts the result set in ascending order when using a GROUP BY clause. To override this default ordering, DESC can be used in an ORDER BY clause.

Instructor Note

Stress the use of DISTINCT and group functions ignoring null values. ALL is the default and is very rarely specified.

Using AVG and SUM Functions

You can use AVG and SUM for numeric data.

```
SQL> SELECT    AVG(sal), MAX(sal),
2          MIN(sal), SUM(sal)
3  FROM      emp
4  WHERE     job LIKE 'SALES%';
```

AVG (SAL)	MAX (SAL)	MIN (SAL)	SUM (SAL)
1400	1600	1250	5600

Group Functions

You can use AVG, SUM, MIN, and MAX functions against columns that can store numeric data. The example on the slide displays the average, highest, lowest, and sum of monthly salaries for all salespeople.

Using MIN and MAX Functions

You can use MIN and MAX for any datatype.

```
SQL> SELECT    MIN(hiredate), MAX(hiredate)
  2  FROM        emp;
```

MIN(HIRED)	MAX(HIRED)
-----	-----
17-DEC-80	12-JAN-83

5-7

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Group Functions (continued)

You can use MAX and MIN functions for any datatype. The slide example displays the most junior and most senior employee.

The following example displays the employee name that is first and the employee name that is the last in an alphabetized list of all employees.

```
SQL> SELECT    MIN(ename), MAX(ename)
  2  FROM        emp;
```

MIN(ENAME)	MAX(ENAME)
-----	-----
ADAMS	WARD

Note: AVG, SUM, VARIANCE, and STDDEV functions can be used only with numeric datatypes.

Using the COUNT Function

COUNT(*) returns the number of rows in a table.

```
SQL> SELECT COUNT(*)
  2  FROM emp
  3  WHERE deptno = 30;
```

COUNT(*)

6

5-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The COUNT Function

The COUNT function has two formats:

- COUNT(*)
- COUNT(*expr*)

COUNT(*) returns the number of rows in a table, including duplicate rows and rows containing null values in any of the columns. If a WHERE clause is included in the SELECT statement, COUNT(*) returns the number of rows that satisfies the condition in the WHERE clause.

In contrast, COUNT(*expr*) returns the number of nonnull rows in the column identified by *expr*.

The slide example displays the number of employees in department 30.

Instructor Note

Demo: 15count1.sql, 15count2.sql

Purpose: To illustrate using the COUNT(*) and COUNT(*expr*) functions.

Using the COUNT Function

COUNT(expr) returns the number of nonnull rows.

```
SQL> SELECT COUNT(comm)
  2  FROM emp
  3  WHERE deptno = 30;
```

```
COUNT (COMM)
-----
4
```

5-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The COUNT Function (continued)

The slide example displays the number of employees in department 30 who can earn a commission. Notice that the result gives the total number of rows to be four because two employees in department 30 cannot earn a commission and contain a null value in the COMM column.

Example

Display the number of departments in the EMP table.

```
SQL> SELECT COUNT(deptno)
  2  FROM emp;
COUNT (DEPTNO)
-----
14
```

Display the number of distinct departments in the EMP table.

```
SQL> SELECT COUNT(DISTINCT (deptno) )
  2  FROM emp;
COUNT (DISTINCT (DEPTNO) )
-----
3
```

Group Functions and Null Values

Group functions ignore null values in the column.

```
SQL> SELECT AVG(comm)
  2  FROM emp;
```

AVG (COMM)

550

Group Functions and Null Values

All group functions except COUNT (*) ignore null values in the column. In the slide example, the average is calculated based *only* on the rows in the table where a valid value is stored in the COMM column. The average is calculated as total commission being paid to all employees divided by the number of employees receiving commission (4).

Using the NVL Function with Group Functions

The NVL function forces group functions to include null values.

```
SQL> SELECT AVG(NVL(comm, 0))  
2   FROM emp;
```

```
AVG (NVL (COMM, 0))  
-----  
157.14286
```

Group Functions and Null Values (continued)

The NVL function forces group functions to include null values. In the slide example, the average is calculated based on *all* rows in the table regardless of whether null values are stored in the COMM column. The average is calculated as total commission being paid to all employees divided by the total number of employees in the company (14).

Creating Groups of Data

EMP

DEPTNO	SAL
10	2450
10	5000
10	1300
20	800
20	1100
20	3000
20	3000
20	2975
30	1600
30	2850
30	1250
30	950
30	1500
30	1250

2916.6667

2175

1566.6667

“average
salary
in EMP
table
for each
department”

DEPTNO	AVG (SAL)
10	2916.6667
20	2175
30	1566.6667

Groups of Data

Until now, all group functions have treated the table as one large group of information. At times, you need to divide the table of information into smaller groups. This can be done by using the GROUP BY clause.

Creating Groups of Data: GROUP BY Clause

```
SELECT      column, group_function(column)
FROM        table
[WHERE      condition]
[GROUP BY   group_by_expression]
[ORDER BY   column];
```

**Divide rows in a table into smaller groups
by using the GROUP BY clause.**

5-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The GROUP BY Clause

You can use the GROUP BY clause to divide the rows in a table into groups. You can then use the group functions to return summary information for each group.

In the syntax:

group_by_expression specifies columns whose values determine the basis for grouping rows

Guidelines

- If you include a group function in a SELECT clause, you cannot select individual results as well *unless* the individual column appears in the GROUP BY clause. You will receive an error message if you fail to include the column list.
- Using a WHERE clause, you can preexclude rows before dividing them into groups.
- You must include the *columns* in the GROUP BY clause.
- You cannot use the column alias in the GROUP BY clause.
- By default, rows are sorted by ascending order of the columns included in the GROUP BY list. You can override this by using the ORDER BY clause.

Using the GROUP BY Clause

All columns in the SELECT list that are not in group functions must be in the GROUP BY clause.

```
SQL> SELECT deptno, AVG(sal)
  2  FROM emp
  3  GROUP BY deptno;
```

DEPTNO	AVG(SAL)
10	2916.6667
20	2175
30	1566.6667

5-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The GROUP BY Clause (continued)

When using the GROUP BY clause, make sure that all columns in the SELECT list that are not in the group functions are included in the GROUP BY clause. The example on the slide displays the department number and the average salary for each department. Here is how this SELECT statement, containing a GROUP BY clause, is evaluated:

- The SELECT clause specifies the columns to be retrieved:
 - Department number column in the EMP table
 - The average of all the salaries in the group you specified in the GROUP BY clause
- The FROM clause specifies the tables that the database must access: the EMP table.
- The WHERE clause specifies the rows to be retrieved. Since there is no WHERE clause, by default all rows are retrieved.
- The GROUP BY clause specifies how the rows should be grouped. The rows are being grouped by department number, so the AVG function that is being applied to the salary column will calculate the *average salary for each department*.

Instructor Note

GROUP results are sorted implicitly, on the grouping column. You can use the ORDER BY to specify a different sort order, remembering to only use group functions, or the grouping column.

Using the GROUP BY Clause

The GROUP BY column does not have to be in the SELECT list.

```
SQL> SELECT      AVG(sal)
  2  FROM        emp
  3  GROUP BY deptno;
```

```
AVG (SAL)
-----
2916.6667
2175
1566.6667
```

5-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The GROUP BY Clause (continued)

The GROUP BY column does not have to be in the SELECT clause. For example, the SELECT statement on the slide displays the average salaries for each department without displaying the respective department numbers. Without the department numbers, however, the results do not look meaningful.

You can use the group function in the ORDER BY clause.

```
SQL> SELECT      deptno,  AVG(sal)
  2  FROM        emp
  3  GROUP BY    deptno
  4  ORDER BY    AVG(sal);
```

```
DEPTNO      AVG(SAL)
-----
30          1566.6667
20          2175
10          2916.6667
```

Instructor Note

Demonstrate the query with and without the DEPTNO in the SELECT statement.

Grouping by More Than One Column

EMP

DEPTNO	JOB	SAL
10	MANAGER	2450
10	PRESIDENT	5000
10	CLERK	1300
20	CLERK	800
20	CLERK	1100
20	ANALYST	3000
20	ANALYST	3000
20	MANAGER	2975
30	SALESMAN	1600
30	MANAGER	2850
30	SALESMAN	1250
30	CLERK	950
30	SALESMAN	1500
30	SALESMAN	1250

"sum salaries in the EMP table for each job, grouped by department"

DEPTNO	JOB	SUM(SAL)
10	CLERK	1300
10	MANAGER	2450
10	PRESIDENT	5000
20	ANALYST	6000
20	CLERK	1900
20	MANAGER	2975
30	CLERK	950
30	MANAGER	2850
30	SALESMAN	5600

Groups Within Groups

Sometimes there is a need to see results for groups within groups. The slide shows a report that displays the total salary being paid to each job title, within each department.

The EMP table is grouped first by department number, and within that grouping, it is grouped by job title. For example, the two clerks in department 20 are grouped together and a single result (total salary) is produced for all salespeople within the group.

Instructor Note

Demo: 15order1.sql, 15order2.sql

Purpose: To illustrate ordering columns that are grouped by DEPTNO first and ordering columns that are grouped by JOB first.

Using the GROUP BY Clause on Multiple Columns

```
SQL> SELECT deptno, job, sum(sal)
2   FROM emp
3  GROUP BY deptno, job;
```

DEPTNO	JOB	SUM(SAL)
10	CLERK	1300
10	MANAGER	2450
10	PRESIDENT	5000
20	ANALYST	6000
20	CLERK	1900
...		
9 rows selected.		

5-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Groups Within Groups (continued)

You can return summary results for groups and subgroups by listing more than one GROUP BY column. You can determine the default sort order of the results by the order of the columns in the GROUP BY clause. Here is how the SELECT statement on the slide, containing a GROUP BY clause, is evaluated:

- The SELECT clause specifies the column to be retrieved:
 - Department number in the EMP table
 - Job title in the EMP table
 - The sum of all the salaries in the group that you specified in the GROUP BY clause
- The FROM clause specifies the tables that the database must access: the EMP table.
- The GROUP BY clause specifies how you must group the rows:
 - First, the rows are grouped by department number.
 - Second, within the department number groups, the rows are grouped by job title.

So the SUM function is being applied to the salary column for all job titles within each department number group.

Illegal Queries Using Group Functions

Any column or expression in the SELECT list that is not an aggregate function must be in the GROUP BY clause.

```
SQL> SELECT deptno, COUNT(ename)
  2  FROM emp;
```

Column missing in the GROUP BY clause

```
SELECT deptno, COUNT(ename)
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-00937: not a single-group group function
```

5-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Illegal Queries Using Group Functions

Whenever you use a mixture of individual items (DEPTNO) and group functions (COUNT) in the same SELECT statement, you must include a GROUP BY clause that specifies the individual items (in this case, DEPTNO). If the GROUP BY clause is missing, then the error message “not a single-group group function” appears and an asterisk (*) points to the offending column. You can correct the error on the slide by adding the GROUP BY clause.

```
SQL> SELECT deptno, COUNT(ename)
  2  FROM emp
  3  GROUP BY deptno;

DEPTNO COUNT (ENAME)
-----
 10          3
 20          5
 30          6
```

Any column or expression in the SELECT list that is not an aggregate function must be in the GROUP BY clause.

Instructor Note

Demo: 15error.sql

Purpose: To illustrate executing a SELECT statement with no GROUP BY clause.

Illegal Queries Using Group Functions

- You cannot use the WHERE clause to restrict groups.
- You use the HAVING clause to restrict groups.

```
SQL> SELECT      deptno,  AVG(sal)
  2  FROM        emp
  3  WHERE        AVG(sal) > 2000
  4  GROUP BY    deptno;
```

```
WHERE AVG(sal) > 2000
*
ERROR at line 3: ORA-00934: group function is not allowed here
```

5-19

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Illegal Queries Using Group Functions (continued)

The WHERE clause cannot be used to restrict groups. The SELECT statement on the slide results in an error because it uses the WHERE clause to restrict the display of average salaries of those departments that have an average salary greater than \$2000.

You can correct the slide error by using the HAVING clause to restrict groups.

```
SQL> SELECT      deptno,  AVG(sal)
  2  FROM        emp
  3  GROUP BY    deptno
  4  HAVING      AVG(sal) > 2000;
```

DEPTNO	AVG (SAL)
10	2916.6667
20	2175

Excluding Group Results

EMP

DEPTNO	SAL
10	2450
10	5000
10	1300
20	800
20	1100
20	3000
20	3000
20	2975
30	1600
30	2850
30	1250
30	950
30	1500
30	1250

5000

3000

2850

**"maximum
salary
per department
greater than
\$2900"**

DEPTNO	MAX (SAL)
10	5000
20	3000

Restricting Group Results

In the same way that you use the WHERE clause to restrict the rows that you select, you use the HAVING clause to restrict groups. To find the maximum salary of each department, but show only the departments that have a maximum salary of more than \$2900, you need to do the following:

- Find the average salary for each department by grouping by department number.
- Restrict the groups to those departments with a maximum salary greater than \$2900.

Excluding Group Results: HAVING Clause

Use the HAVING clause to restrict groups

- Rows are grouped.
- The group function is applied.
- Groups matching the HAVING clause are displayed.

```
SELECT      column, group_function
FROM        table
[WHERE      condition]
[GROUP BY   group_by_expression]
[HAVING     group_condition]
[ORDER BY   column];
```

5-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The HAVING Clause

You use the HAVING clause to specify which groups are to be displayed. Therefore, you further restrict the groups on the basis of aggregate information.

In the syntax:

<i>group_condition</i>	restricts the groups of rows returned to those groups for which the specified condition is TRUE
------------------------	--

The Oracle Server performs the following steps when you use the HAVING clause:

- Rows are grouped.
- The group function is applied to the group.
- The groups that match the criteria in the HAVING clause are displayed.

The HAVING clause can precede the GROUP BY clause, but it is recommended that you place the GROUP BY clause first because it is more logical. Groups are formed and group functions are calculated before the HAVING clause is applied to the groups in the SELECT list.

Using the HAVING Clause

```
SQL> SELECT deptno, max(sal)
  2  FROM emp
  3  GROUP BY deptno
  4  HAVING max(sal)>2900;
```

DEPTNO	MAX(SAL)
10	5000
20	3000

5-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The HAVING Clause (continued)

The slide example displays department numbers and maximum salary for those departments whose maximum salary is greater than \$2900.

You can use the GROUP BY clause without using a group function in the SELECT list.

If you restrict rows based on the result of a group function, you must have a GROUP BY clause as well as the HAVING clause.

The following example displays the department numbers and average salary for those departments whose maximum salary is greater than \$2900:

```
SQL> SELECT deptno, AVG(sal)
  2  FROM emp
  3  GROUP BY deptno
  4  HAVING MAX(sal) > 2900;
```

DEPTNO	AVG(SAL)
10	2916.6667
20	2175

Using the HAVING Clause

```
SQL> SELECT      job, SUM(sal) PAYROLL
  2  FROM        emp
  3  WHERE       job NOT LIKE 'SALES%'
  4  GROUP BY    job
  5  HAVING      SUM(sal)>5000
  6  ORDER BY    SUM(sal);
```

JOB	PAYROLL
ANALYST	6000
MANAGER	8275

5-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The HAVING Clause (continued)

The slide example displays the job title and total monthly salary for each job title with a total payroll exceeding \$5000. The example excludes salespeople and sorts the list by the total monthly salary.

Instructor Note

Demo: 15job1.sql, 15job2.sql

Purpose: To illustrate using a WHERE clause to restrict rows by JOB and using a HAVING clause to restrict groups by SUM(SAL).

Nesting Group Functions

Display the maximum average salary.

```
SQL> SELECT    max(avg(sal))  
2   FROM      emp  
3   GROUP BY  deptno;
```

```
MAX (AVG (SAL))  
-----  
2916.6667
```

5-24

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Nesting Group Functions

Group functions can be nested to a depth of two. The slide example displays the maximum average salary.

Summary

```
SELECT      column, group_function(column)
FROM        table
[WHERE      condition]
[GROUP BY   group_by_expression]
[HAVING     group_condition]
[ORDER BY   column];
```

Order of evaluation of the clauses:

- **WHERE clause**
- **GROUP BY clause**
- **HAVING clause**

5-25

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Summary

Seven group functions are available in SQL:

- AVG
- COUNT
- MAX
- MIN
- SUM
- STDDEV
- VARIANCE

You can create subgroups by using the GROUP BY clause. Groups can be excluded using the HAVING clause.

Place the HAVING and GROUP BY clauses after the WHERE clause in a statement. Place the ORDER BY clause last.

The Oracle Server evaluates the clauses in the following order:

- If the statement contains a WHERE clause, the server establishes the candidate rows.
- The server identifies the groups specified in the GROUP BY clause.
- The HAVING clause further restricts result groups that do not meet the group criteria in the HAVING clause.

Practice Overview

- Showing different queries that use group functions
- Grouping by rows to achieve more than one result
- Excluding groups by using the HAVING clause

5-26

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Practice Overview

At the end of this practice, you should be familiar with using group functions and selecting groups of data.

Paper-Based Questions

For questions 1–3, circle either True or False.

Note: Column aliases are used for the queries.

Instructor Note

Hint for Practice #7: Advise the students to think about the MGR column in EMP when determining the number of managers, rather than the JOB column.

Practice 5

Determine the validity of the following statements. Circle either True or False.

1. Group functions work across many rows to produce one result per group.
True/False
2. Group functions include nulls in calculations.
True/False
3. The WHERE clause restricts rows prior to inclusion in a group calculation.
True/False
4. Display the highest, lowest, sum, and average salary of all employees. Label the columns Maximum, Minimum, Sum, and Average, respectively. Round your results to the nearest whole number. Save your SQL statement in a file called p5q4.sql.

Maximum	Minimum	Sum	Average
-----	-----	-----	-----
5000	800	29025	2073

5. Modify p5q4.sql to display the minimum, maximum, sum, and average salary for each job type. Resave to a file called p5q5.sql. Rerun your query.

JOB	Maximum	Minimum	Sum	Average
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
ANALYST	3000	3000	6000	3000
CLERK	1300	800	4150	1038
MANAGER	2975	2450	8275	2758
PRESIDENT	5000	5000	5000	5000
SALESMAN	1600	1250	5600	1400

6. Write a query to display the number of people with the same job.

JOB	COUNT (*)
-----	-----
ANALYST	2
CLERK	4
MANAGER	3
PRESIDENT	1
SALESMAN	4

Practice 5 (continued)

7. Determine the number of managers without listing them. Label the column Number of Managers.

Number of Managers

6

8. Write a query that will display the difference between the highest and lowest salaries. Label the column DIFFERENCE.

DIFFERENCE

4200

If you have time, complete the following exercises:

9. Display the manager number and the salary of the lowest paid employee for that manager. Exclude anyone whose manager is not known. Exclude any groups where the minimum salary is less than \$1000. Sort the output in descending order of salary.

MGR	MIN(SAL)
-----	-----
7566	3000
7839	2450
7782	1300
7788	1100

10. Write a query to display the department name, location name, number of employees, and the average salary for all employees in that department. Label the columns dname, loc, Number of People, and Salary, respectively. Round the average salary to two decimal places.

DNAME	LOC	Number of People	Salary
-----	-----	-----	-----
ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK	3	2916.67
RESEARCH	DALLAS	5	2175
SALES	CHICAGO	6	1566.67

Practice 5 (continued)

If you want extra challenge, complete the following exercises:

11. Create a query that will display the total number of employees and of that total the number who were hired in 1980, 1981, 1982, and 1983. Give appropriate column headings.

TOTAL	1980	1981	1982	1983
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
14	1	10	2	1

12. Create a matrix query to display the job, the salary for that job based on department number, and the total salary for that job for all departments, giving each column an appropriate heading.

Job	Dept 10	Dept 20	Dept 30	Total
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
ANALYST		6000		6000
CLERK	1300	1900	950	4150
MANAGER	2450	2975	2850	8275
PRESIDENT	5000			5000
SALESMAN			5600	5600

6

Subqueries

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	25 minutes	Lecture
	30 minutes	Practice
	55 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

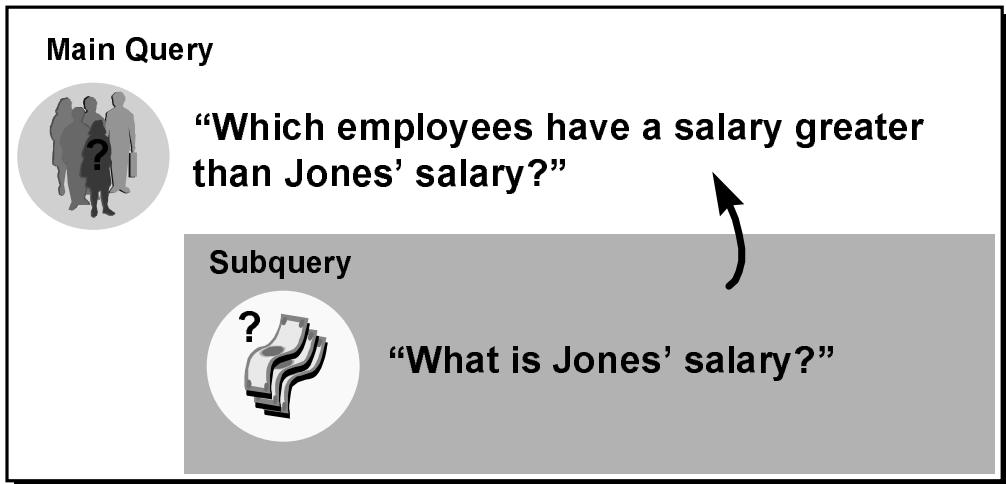
- **Describe the types of problems that subqueries can solve**
- **Define subqueries**
- **List the types of subqueries**
- **Write single-row and multiple-row subqueries**

Lesson Aim

In this lesson, you will learn about more advanced features of the SELECT statement. You can write subqueries in the WHERE clause of another SQL statement to obtain values based on an unknown conditional value. This lesson covers single-row subqueries and multiple-row subqueries.

Using a Subquery to Solve a Problem

“Who has a salary greater than Jones’?”



6-3

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using a Subquery to Solve a Problem

Suppose you want to write a query to find out who earns a salary greater than Jones' salary.

To solve this problem, you need *two* queries: one query to find what Jones earns and a second query to find who earns more than that amount.

You can solve this problem by combining the two queries, placing one query *inside* the other query.

The inner query or the *subquery* returns a value that is used by the outer query or the main query.

Using a subquery is equivalent to performing two sequential queries and using the result of the first query as the search value in the second query.

Subqueries

```
SELECT      select_list
FROM        table
WHERE       expr operator
            (SELECT      select_list
             FROM       table);
```

- **The subquery (inner query) executes once before the main query.**
- **The result of the subquery is used by the main query (outer query).**

Subqueries

A subquery is a SELECT statement that is embedded in a clause of another SELECT statement. You can build powerful statements out of simple ones by using subqueries. They can be very useful when you need to select rows from a table with a condition that depends on the data in the table itself.

You can place the subquery in a number of SQL clauses:

- WHERE clause
- HAVING clause
- FROM clause

In the syntax:

operator includes a comparison operator such as *>*, *=*, or *IN*

Note: Comparison operators fall into two classes: single-row operators (*>*, *=*, *>=*, *<*, *<>*, *<=*) and multiple-row operators (*IN*, *ANY*, *ALL*).

The subquery is often referred to as a nested SELECT, sub-SELECT, or inner SELECT statement. The subquery generally executes first, and its output is used to complete the query condition for the main or outer query.

Instructor Note

Additionally, subqueries can be placed in the CREATE VIEW statement, CREATE TABLE statement, UPDATE clause, INTO clause of an INSERT statement, and SET clause of an UPDATE statement.

Using a Subquery

```
SQL> SELECT ename
  2  FROM emp
  3 WHERE sal > 2975
  4
  5
  6
```

(SELECT sal
FROM emp
WHERE empno=7566);

ENAME

KING
FORD
SCOTT

6-5

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using a Subquery

In the slide, the inner query determines the salary of employee 7566. The outer query takes the result of the inner query and uses this result to display all the employees who earn more than this amount.

Instructor Note

Execute the subquery (inner query) on its own first to show the value that the subquery returns. Then execute the outer query using the result returned by the inner query. Finally, execute the entire query (containing the subquery) and show that the result is the same.

Guidelines for Using Subqueries

- **Enclose subqueries in parentheses.**
- **Place subqueries on the right side of the comparison operator.**
- **Do not add an ORDER BY clause to a subquery.**
- **Use single-row operators with single-row subqueries.**
- **Use multiple-row operators with multiple-row subqueries.**

6-6

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Guidelines for Using Subqueries

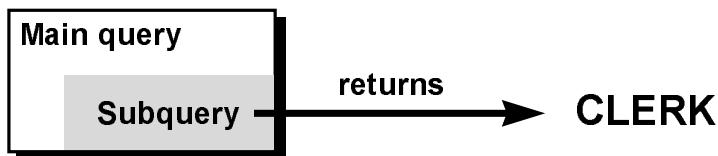
- A subquery must be enclosed in parentheses.
- A subquery must appear on the right side of the comparison operator.
- Subqueries cannot contain an ORDER BY clause. You can have only one ORDER BY clause for a SELECT statement, and if specified it must be the last clause in the main SELECT statement.
- Two classes of comparison operators are used in subqueries: single-row operators and multiple-row operators.

Instructor Note

A subquery can execute multiple times in correlated subqueries, which are not included in this course. Students may ask how many subqueries can be written. The Oracle Server imposes no limit on the number of subqueries. The limit is related to the buffer size that the query uses.

Types of Subqueries

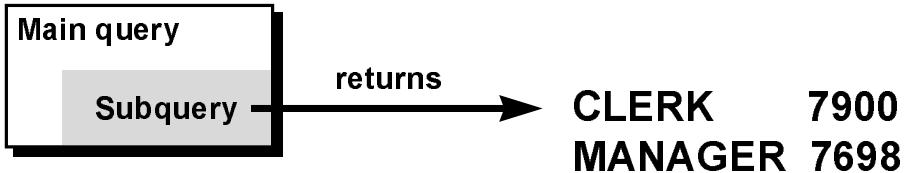
- Single-row subquery



- Multiple-row subquery



- Multiple-column subquery



6-7

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Types of Subqueries

- Single-row subqueries: Queries that return only one row from the inner SELECT statement
- Multiple-row subqueries: Queries that return more than one row from the inner SELECT statement
- Multiple-column subqueries: Queries that return more than one column from the inner SELECT statement

Single-Row Subqueries

- Return only one row
- Use single-row comparison operators

Operator	Meaning
=	Equal to
>	Greater than
>=	Greater than or equal to
<	Less than
<=	Less than or equal to
<>	Not equal to

6-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Single-Row Subqueries

A *single-row subquery* is one that returns one row from the inner SELECT statement. This type of subquery uses a single-row operator. The slide gives a list of single-row operators.

Example

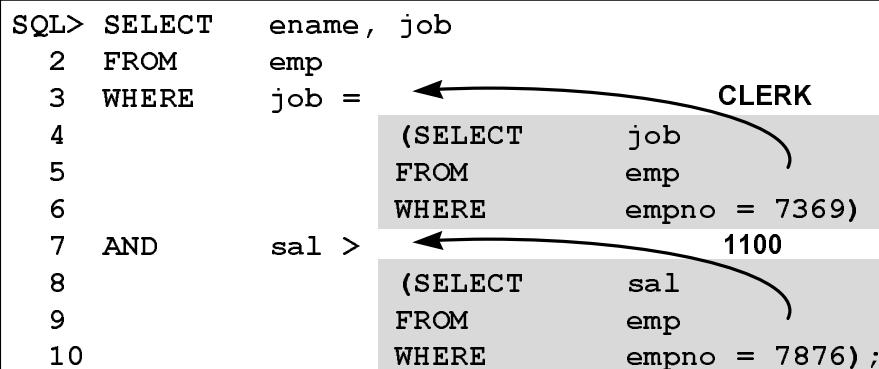
Display the employees whose job title is the same as that of employee 7369.

```
SQL> SELECT    ename,  job
      2  FROM     emp
      3 WHERE    job =
      4          (SELECT    job
      5            FROM     emp
      6           WHERE    empno = 7369) ;
```

ENAME	JOB
JAMES	CLERK
SMITH	CLERK
ADAMS	CLERK
MILLER	CLERK

Executing Single-Row Subqueries

```
SQL> SELECT      ename, job
  2  FROM        emp
  3  WHERE      job = (SELECT      job
  4                      FROM        emp
  5                      WHERE      empno = 7369)
  6
  7  AND       sal > (SELECT      sal
  8                      FROM        emp
  9                      WHERE      empno = 7876);
 10
```



ENAME	JOB
MILLER	CLERK

6-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Executing Single-Row Subqueries

A SELECT statement can be considered as a query block. The example on the slide displays employees whose job title is the same as that of employee 7369 and whose salary is greater than that of employee 7876.

The example consists of three query blocks: the outer query and two inner queries. The inner query blocks are executed first, producing the query results: CLERK and 1100, respectively. The outer query block is then processed and uses the values returned by the inner queries to complete its search conditions.

Both inner queries return single values (CLERK and 1100, respectively), so this SQL statement is called a single-row subquery.

Note: The outer and inner queries can get data from different tables.

Using Group Functions in a Subquery

```
SQL> SELECT    ename, job, sal
  2  FROM      emp
  3  WHERE     sal =          800
  4
  5
      (SELECT      MIN(sal)
       FROM        emp) ;
```

ENAME	JOB	SAL
SMITH	CLERK	800

6-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using Group Functions in a Subquery

You can display data from a main query by using a group function in a subquery to return a single row. The subquery is in parentheses and is placed after the comparison operator.

The example on the slide displays the employee name, job title, and salary of all employees whose salary is equal to the minimum salary. The MIN group function returns a single value (800) to the outer query.

HAVING Clause with Subqueries

- The Oracle Server executes subqueries first.
- The Oracle Server returns results into the HAVING clause of the main query.

```
SQL> SELECT      deptno, MIN(sal)
  2  FROM          emp
  3  GROUP BY      deptno
  4  HAVING        MIN(sal) > 800
  5
  6
  7
```

(SELECT MIN(sal)
 FROM emp
 WHERE deptno = 20);

6-11

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

HAVING Clause with Subqueries

You can use subqueries not only in the WHERE clause, but also in the HAVING clause. The Oracle Server executes the subquery, and the results are returned into the HAVING clause of the main query. The SQL statement on the slide displays all the departments that have a minimum salary greater than that of department 20.

DEPTNO	MIN(SAL)
10	1300
30	950

Example

Find the job with the lowest average salary.

```
SQL> SELECT      job, AVG(sal)
  2  FROM          emp
  3  GROUP BY      job
  4  HAVING        AVG(sal) = (SELECT      MIN(AVG(sal))
                               FROM          EMP
                               GROUP BY      job);
```

What Is Wrong with This Statement?

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename
  2  FROM   emp
  3  WHERE  sal =
  4
  5
  6
```

Single-row operator with multiple-row subquery

```
(SELECT    MIN(sal)
  FROM      emp
  GROUP BY  deptno);
```

```
ERROR:
ORA-01427: single-row subquery returns more than
one row

no rows selected
```

6-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Errors with Subqueries

One common error with subqueries is more than one row returned for a single-row subquery.

In the SQL statement on the slide, the subquery contains a GROUP BY (deptno) clause, which implies that the subquery will return multiple rows, one for each group it finds. In this case, the result of the subquery will be 800, 1300, and 950.

The outer query takes the results of the subquery (800, 950, 1300) and uses these results in its WHERE clause. The WHERE clause contains an equal (=) operator, a single-row comparison operator expecting only one value. The = operator cannot accept more than one value from the subquery and hence generates the error.

To correct this error, change the = operator to IN.

Will This Statement Work?

```
SQL> SELECT ename, job  
2   FROM emp  
3  WHERE job =  
4          (SELECT job  
5            FROM emp  
6           WHERE ename='SMYTHE');
```

```
no rows selected
```

Subquery returns no values

6-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Problems with Subqueries

A common problem with subqueries is no rows being returned by the inner query.

In the SQL statement on the slide, the subquery contains a WHERE (ename='SMYTHE') clause. Presumably, the intention is to find the employee whose name is Smythe. The statement seems to be correct but selects no rows when executed.

The problem is that Smythe is misspelled. There is no employee named Smythe. So the subquery returns no rows. The outer query takes the results of the subquery (null) and uses these results in its WHERE clause. The outer query finds no employee with a job title equal to null and so returns no rows.

Multiple-Row Subqueries

- Return more than one row
- Use multiple-row comparison operators

Operator	Meaning
IN	Equal to any member in the list
ANY	Compare value to each value returned by the subquery
ALL	Compare value to every value returned by the subquery

6-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Multiple-Row Subqueries

Subqueries that return more than one row are called *multiple-row subqueries*. You use a multiple-row operator, instead of a single-row operator, with a multiple-row subquery. The multiple-row operator expects one or more values.

```
SQL> SELECT      ename, sal, deptno
  2  FROM        emp
  3 WHERE      sal IN (SELECT      MIN(sal)
  4                      FROM        emp
  5                      GROUP BY deptno);
```

Example

Find the employees who earn the same salary as the minimum salary for departments.

The inner query is executed first, producing a query result containing three rows: 800, 950, 1300. The main query block is then processed and uses the values returned by the inner query to complete its search condition. In fact, the main query would look like the following to the Oracle Server:

```
SQL> SELECT      ename, sal, deptno
  2  FROM        emp
  3 WHERE      sal IN (800, 950, 1300);
```

Using ANY Operator in Multiple-Row Subqueries

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, job 1300
  2  FROM emp
  3 WHERE sal < ANY
  4
  5           (SELECT sal
  6            FROM emp
  7           WHERE job = 'CLERK')
  8
  9 AND      job <> 'CLERK';
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB

7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN
7521	WARD	SALESMAN

6-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Multiple-Row Subqueries (continued)

The ANY operator (and its synonym SOME operator) compares a value to *each* value returned by a subquery. The slide example displays employees whose salary is less than any clerk and who are not clerks. The maximum salary that a clerk earns is \$1300. The SQL statement displays all the employees who are not clerks but earn less than \$1300.

<ANY means less than the maximum. >ANY means more than the minimum. =ANY is equivalent to IN.

Instructor Note

When using SOME or ANY, you often use the DISTINCT keyword to prevent rows from being selected several times.

Using ALL Operator in Multiple-Row Subqueries

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, job
  2  FROM emp
  3 WHERE sal > ALL
  4       (SELECT avg(sal)
  5        FROM emp
  6        GROUP BY deptno);
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB
7839	KING	PRESIDENT
7566	JONES	MANAGER
7902	FORD	ANALYST
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST

6-16

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Multiple-Row Subqueries (continued)

The ALL operator compares a value to *every* value returned by a subquery. The slide example displays employees whose salary is greater than the average salaries of all the departments. The highest average salary of a department is \$2916.66, so the query returns those employees whose salary is greater than \$2916.66.

>ALL means more than the maximum and <ALL means less than the minimum.

The NOT operator can be used with IN, ANY, and ALL operators.

Summary

Subqueries are useful when a query is based on unknown values.

```
SELECT    select_list
FROM      table
WHERE     expr operator
          (SELECT select_list
           FROM   table);
```

6-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Summary

A subquery is a SELECT statement that is embedded in a clause of another SQL statement. Subqueries are useful when a query is based on a search criteria with unknown intermediate values. Subqueries have the following characteristics:

- Can pass one row of data to a main statement that contains a single-row operator, such as =, <>, >, >=, <, or <=
- Can pass multiple rows of data to a main statement that contains a multiple-row operator, such as IN
- Are processed first by the Oracle Server, and the WHERE or HAVING clause uses the results
- Can contain group functions

Practice Overview

- **Creating subqueries to query values based on unknown criteria**
- **Using subqueries to find out what values exist in one set of data and not in another**

6-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Practice Overview

In this practice, you will write complex queries using nested SELECT statements.

Paper-Based Questions

You may want to consider creating the inner query first for these questions. Make sure that it runs and produces the data that you anticipate before coding the outer query.

Practice 6

1. Write a query to display the employee name and hire date for all employees in the same department as Blake. Exclude Blake.

ENAME	HIREDATE
ALLEN	20-FEB-81
WARD	22-FEB-81
MARTIN	28-SEP-81
TURNER	08-SEP-81
JAMES	03-DEC-81

5 rows selected.

2. Create a query to display the employee number and name for all employees who earn more than the average salary. Sort the results in descending order of salary.

EMPNO	ENAME
7839	KING
7902	FORD
7788	SCOTT
7566	JONES
7698	BLAKE
7782	CLARK

6 rows selected.

3. Write a query that will display the employee number and name for all employees who work in a department with any employee whose name contains a *T*. Save your SQL statement in a file called p6q3.sql.

EMPNO	ENAME
7566	JONES
7788	SCOTT
7876	ADAMS
7369	SMITH
7902	FORD
7698	BLAKE
7654	MARTIN
7499	ALLEN
7844	TURNER
7900	JAMES
7521	WARD

11 rows selected.

Practice 6 (continued)

4. Display the employee name, department number, and job title for all employees whose department location is Dallas.

ENAME	DEPTNO	JOB
JONES	20	MANAGER
FORD	20	ANALYST
SMITH	20	CLERK
SCOTT	20	ANALYST
ADAMS	20	CLERK

5. Display the employee name and salary of all employees who report to King.

ENAME	SAL
BLAKE	2850
CLARK	2450
JONES	2975

6. Display the department number, name, and job for all employees in the Sales department.

DEPTNO	ENAME	JOB
30	BLAKE	MANAGER
30	MARTIN	SALESMAN
30	ALLEN	SALESMAN
30	TURNER	SALESMAN
30	JAMES	CLERK
30	WARD	SALESMAN

6 rows selected.

If you have time, complete the following exercises:

7. Modify p6q3.sql to display the employee number, name, and salary for all employees who earn more than the average salary and who work in a department with any employee with a *T* in their name. Resave as p6q7.sql. Rerun your query.

EMPNO	ENAME	SAL
7566	JONES	2975
7788	SCOTT	3000
7902	FORD	3000
7698	BLAKE	2850

7

Multiple-Column Subqueries

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	20 minutes	Lecture
	20 minutes	Practice
	40 minutes	Total

Objectives

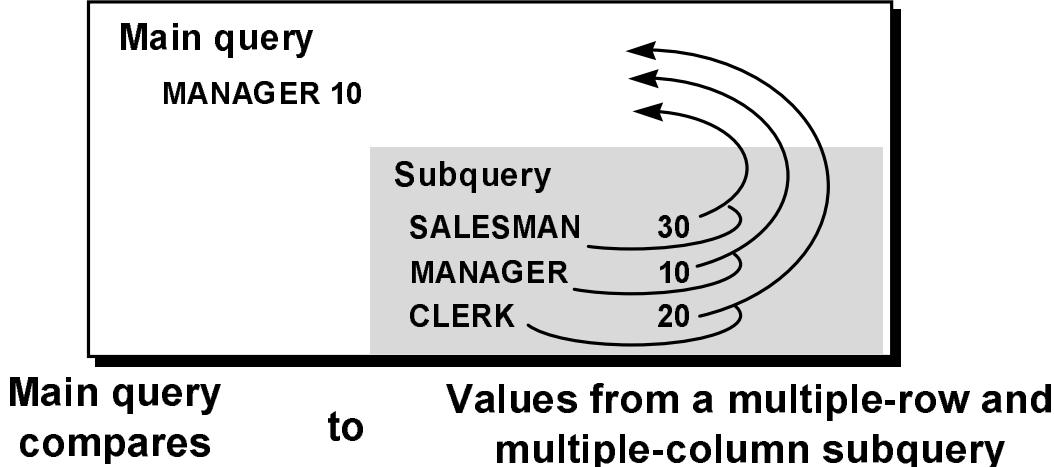
After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **Write a multiple-column subquery**
- **Describe and explain the behavior of subqueries when null values are retrieved**
- **Write a subquery in a FROM clause**

Lesson Aim

In this lesson, you will learn how to write multiple-column subqueries and subqueries in the FROM clause of a SELECT statement.

Multiple-Column Subqueries



MANAGER 10

SALESMAN 30
MANAGER 10
CLERK 20

7-3

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Multiple-Column Subqueries

So far you have written single-row subqueries and multiple-row subqueries where only one column was compared in the WHERE clause or HAVING clause of the SELECT statement. If you want to compare two or more columns, you must write a compound WHERE clause using logical operators. Multiple-column subqueries enable you to combine duplicate WHERE conditions into a single WHERE clause.

Syntax

```
SELECT    column, column, ...
FROM      table
WHERE     (column, column, ...) IN
          (SELECT column, column, ...
           FROM   table
           WHERE  condition);
```

Using Multiple-Column Subqueries

Display the order id, product id, and quantity of items in the item table that match both the product id and quantity of an item in order 605.

```
SQL> SELECT ordid, prodid, qty
  2  FROM item
  3 WHERE (prodid, qty) IN
  4                               (SELECT prodid, qty
  5                                FROM item
  6                               WHERE ordid = 605)
  7 AND      ordid <> 605;
```

7-4

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using Multiple-Column Subqueries

The example on the slide is that of a multiple-column subquery because the subquery returns more than one column. It compares the values in the PRODID column and the QTY column of each candidate row in the ITEM table to the values in the PRODID column and QTY column for items in order 605.

First, execute the subquery to see the PRODID and QTY values for each item in order 605.

```
SQL> SELECT prodid, qty
  2  FROM item
  3 WHERE ordid = 605;
```

PRODID	QTY
100861	100
100870	500
100890	5
101860	50
101863	100
102130	10

6 rows selected.

Using Multiple-Column Subqueries

Display the order number, product number, and quantity of any item in which the product number and quantity match both the product number and quantity of an item in order 605.

```
SQL> SELECT ordid, prodid, qty
  2  FROM item
  3 WHERE (prodid, qty) IN
  4                               (SELECT prodid, qty
  5                                FROM item
  6                                WHERE ordid = 605)
  7 AND      ordid <> 605;
```

7-5

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using Multiple-Column Subqueries (continued)

When the SQL statement on the slide is executed, the Oracle server compares the values in both the PRODID and QTY columns and returns those orders where the product number and quantity for *that* product match *both* the product number and quantity for an item in order 605.

The output of the SQL statement is:

ORDID	PRODID	QTY
617	100861	100
617	100870	500
616	102130	10

The output shows that there are three items in other orders that contain the same product number and quantity as an item in order 605. For example, order 617 has ordered a quantity 500 of product 100870. Order 605 has also ordered a quantity 500 of product 100870. Therefore, these candidate rows are part of the output.

Instructor Note

Demo: 17pair.sql

Purpose: To illustrate a pairwise, multiple-column subquery.

Column Comparisons

Pairwise	
PRODID	QTY
101863	100
100861	100
102130	10
100890	5
100870	500
101860	50

Nonpairwise	
PRODID	QTY
101863	100
100861	100
102130	10
100890	5
100870	500
101860	50

Pairwise Versus Nonpairwise Comparisons

Column comparisons in a multiple-column subquery can be pairwise comparisons or nonpairwise comparisons.

The slide shows the product numbers and quantities of the items in order 605.

In the example on the previous slide, a pairwise comparison was executed in the WHERE clause. Each candidate row in the SELECT statement must have *both* the same product number and same quantity as an item in order 605. This is illustrated on the left side of the slide above. The arrows indicate that both the product number and quantity in a candidate row match a product number and quantity of an item in order 605.

A multiple-column subquery can also be a nonpairwise comparison. If you want a nonpairwise comparison (a cross product), you must use a WHERE clause with multiple conditions. A candidate row must match the multiple conditions in the WHERE clause but the values are compared individually. A candidate row must match some product number in order 605 as well as some quantity in order 605, but these values do not need to be in the same row. This is illustrated on the right side of the slide. For example, product 102130 appears in other orders, one order matching the quantity in order 605 (10), and another order having a quantity of 500. The arrows show a sampling of the various quantities ordered for a particular product.

Nonpairwise Comparison Subquery

Display the order number, product number, and quantity of any item in which the product number and quantity match any product number and any quantity of an item in order 605.

```
SQL> SELECT ordid, prodid, qty
  2  FROM item
  3 WHERE prodid IN (SELECT prodid
  4                      FROM item
  5                     WHERE ordid = 605)
  6 AND      qty     IN (SELECT qty
  7                      FROM item
  8                     WHERE ordid = 605)
  9 AND      ordid <> 605;
```

7-7

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Nonpairwise Comparison Subquery

The slide example does a nonpairwise comparison of the columns. It displays the order number, product number, and quantity of any item in which the product number and quantity match any product number and quantity of an item in order 605. Order 605 is not included in the output.

Instructor Note

Demo: 17nonpair.sql

Purpose: To illustrate a nonpairwise, multiple-column subquery.

Nonpairwise Subquery

ORDID	PRODID	QTY
609	100870	5
616	100861	10
616	102130	10
621	100861	10
618	100870	10
618	100861	50
616	100870	50
617	100861	100
619	102130	100
615	100870	100
617	101860	100
621	100870	100
617	102130	100
.		
16 rows selected.		

7-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Nonpairwise Subquery

The results of the nonpairwise subquery are shown in the slide. Sixteen candidate rows in the ITEM table match the multiple conditions in the WHERE clause.

For example, an item from order 621 is returned from the SQL statement. A product in order 621 (product number 100861) matches a product in an item in order 605. The quantity for product 100861 in order 621 (10) matches the quantity in another item in order 605 (the quantity for product 102130).

Instructor Note

The highlighted sections in the slide indicate those rows that match some product in order 605, and some quantity in order 605. Note that the rows that are returned from the pairwise comparison are included in the output of the nonpairwise comparison. These rows are not highlighted.

Null Values in a Subquery

```
SQL> SELECT employee.ename
  2  FROM emp employee
  3 WHERE employee.empno NOT IN
  4                               (SELECT manager.mgr
  5                                FROM emp manager);
no rows selected.
```

7-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Returning Nulls in the Resulting Set of a Subquery

The SQL statement on the slide attempts to display all the employees who do not have any subordinates. Logically, this SQL statement should have returned eight rows. However, the SQL statement does not return any rows. One of the values returned by the inner query is a null value and hence the entire query returns no rows. The reason is that all conditions that compare a null value result in a null. So whenever null values are likely to be part of the resultant set of a subquery, do not use the NOT IN operator. The NOT IN operator is equivalent to !=ALL.

Notice that the null value as part of the resultant set of a subquery will not be a problem if you are using the IN operator. The IN operator is equivalent to =ANY. For example, to display the employees who have subordinates, use the following SQL statement:

```
SQL> SELECT employee.ename
  2  FROM emp employee
  3 WHERE employee.empno IN (SELECT manager.mgr
  4                                FROM emp manager);

ENAME
-----
KING
...
6 rows selected.
```

Using a Subquery in the FROM Clause

```
SQL> SELECT a.ename, a.sal, a.deptno, b.salavg
  2  FROM emp a, (SELECT deptno, avg(sal) salavg
  3          FROM emp
  4         GROUP BY deptno) b
  5 WHERE a.deptno = b.deptno
  6 AND a.sal > b.salavg;
```

ENAME	SAL	DEPTNO	SALAVG
KING	5000	10	2916.6667
JONES	2975	20	2175
SCOTT	3000	20	2175
...			
6 rows selected.			

7-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using a Subquery in the FROM Clause

You can use a subquery in the FROM clause of a SELECT statement, which is very similar to how views are used. A subquery in the FROM clause of a SELECT statement defines a data source for that particular SELECT statement, and only that SELECT statement. The slide example displays employee names, salaries, department numbers, and average salaries for all the employees who make more than the average salary in their department.

Instructor Note (for page 7-9)

Explain to students that returning NULLS in subqueries can be avoided by using the WHERE col IS NOT clause in the subquery or by using the NVL single row function in the SELECT list, when the NOT IN operator is used in the main query.

Summary

- **A multiple-column subquery returns more than one column.**
- **Column comparisons in multiple-column comparisons can be pairwise or nonpairwise.**
- **A multiple-column subquery can also be used in the FROM clause of a SELECT statement.**

7-11

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Summary

Multiple-column subqueries enable you to combine duplicate WHERE conditions into a single WHERE clause. Column comparisons in a multiple-column subquery can be pairwise comparisons or nonpairwise comparisons. You can use a subquery to define a table to be operated on by a containing query. You do this by placing the subquery in the FROM clause of the containing query as you would a table name.

Practice Overview

Creating multiple-column subqueries

7-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Practice Overview

In this practice, you will write multiple-value subqueries.

Practice 7

1. Write a query to display the name, department number, and salary of any employee whose department number and salary match the department number and salary of any employee who earns a commission.

ENAME	DEPTNO	SAL
MARTIN	30	1250
WARD	30	1250
TURNER	30	1500
ALLEN	30	1600

2. Display the name, department name, and salary of any employee whose salary and commission match the salary and commission of any employee located in Dallas.

ENAME	DNAME	SAL
SMITH	RESEARCH	800
ADAMS	RESEARCH	1100
JONES	RESEARCH	2975
FORD	RESEARCH	3000
SCOTT	RESEARCH	3000

3. Create a query to display the name, hire date, and salary for all employees who have both the same salary and commission as Scott.

Note: Do not display SCOTT in the result set.

ENAME	HIREDATE	SAL
FORD	03-DEC-81	3000

4. Create a query to display the employees that earn a salary that is higher than the salary of all of the clerks. Sort the results on salary from highest to lowest.

ENAME	JOB	SAL
KING	PRESIDENT	5000
FORD	ANALYST	3000
SCOTT	ANALYST	3000
JONES	MANAGER	2975
BLAKE	MANAGER	2850
CLARK	MANAGER	2450
ALLEN	SALESMAN	1600
TURNER	SALESMAN	1500

8 rows selected.

8

Producing Readable Output with SQL*Plus

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	20 minutes	Lecture
	20 minutes	Practice
	40 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **Produce queries that require an input variable**
- **Customize the SQL*Plus environment**
- **Produce more readable output**
- **Create and execute script files**
- **Save customizations**

8-2

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

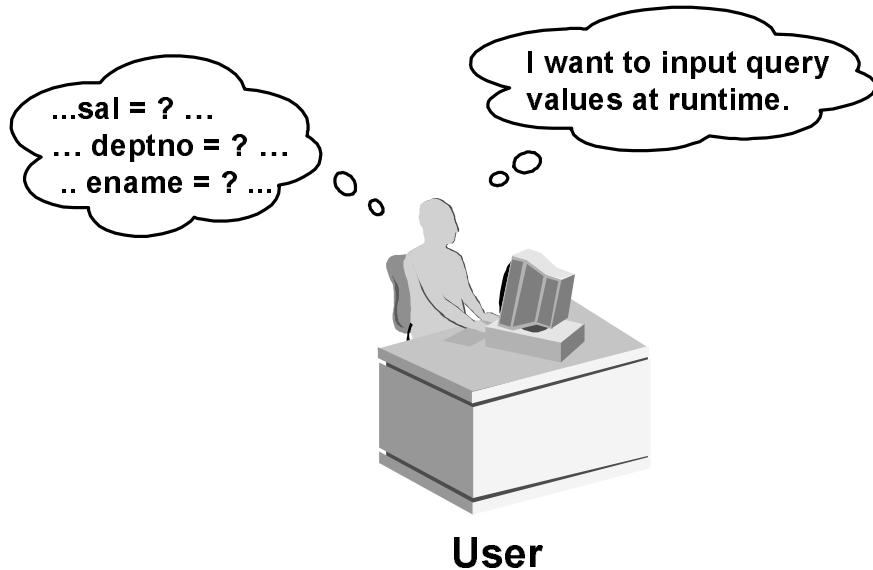
ORACLE®

Lesson Aim

In this lesson, you will learn how to include SQL*Plus commands to produce more readable SQL output.

You can create a command file containing a WHERE clause to restrict the rows displayed. To change the condition each time the command file is run, you use substitution variables. Substitution variables can replace values in the WHERE clause, a text string, and even a column or a table name.

Interactive Reports



User

8-3

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Interactive Reports

The examples so far have not been interactive in any way. In a finished application, the user would trigger the report, and the report would run without further prompting. The range of data would be predetermined by the fixed WHERE clause in the SQL*Plus script file.

Using SQL*Plus, you can create reports that prompt the user to supply their own values to restrict the range of data returned. To create interactive reports, you can embed *substitution variables* in a command file or in a single SQL statement. A variable can be thought of as a container in which the values are temporarily stored.

Instructor Note

Demo: 18varno.sql, 18varyes.sql

Purpose: To illustrate returning all rows, and using a case-insensitive query with substitution variables.

Substitution Variables

- **Use SQL*Plus substitution variables to temporarily store values.**
 - Single ampersand (&)
 - Double ampersand (&&)
 - DEFINE and ACCEPT commands
- **Pass variable values between SQL statements.**
- **Dynamically alter headers and footers.**

8-4

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Substitution Variables

In SQL*Plus, you can use single-ampersand (&) substitution variables to temporarily store values.

You can predefine variables in SQL*Plus by using the ACCEPT or DEFINE commands. ACCEPT reads a line of user input and stores it in a variable. DEFINE creates and assigns a value to a variable.

Examples of Restricted Ranges of Data

- Report figures for the current quarter or specified date range only
- Report on data relevant to the user requesting the report only
- Display personnel within a given department only

Other Interactive Effects

Interactive effects are not restricted to direct user interaction with the WHERE clause. The same principles can be used to achieve other goals. For example:

- Dynamically altering headers and footers
- Obtaining input values from a file rather than from a person
- Passing values from one SQL statement to another

SQL*Plus does not support validation checks (except for datatype) on user input. Make sure that the prompts that you write for the user are simple and unambiguous.

Instructor Note

A substitution variable can be used anywhere in SQL and SQL*Plus commands, except as the first word entered at the command prompt.

Using the & Substitution Variable

Use a variable prefixed with an ampersand (&) to prompt the user for a value.

```
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, sal, deptno  
2  FROM emp  
3  WHERE empno = &employee_num;
```

```
Enter value for employee_num: 7369
```

EMPNO	ENAME	SAL	DEPTNO
7369	SMITH	800	20

Single-Ampersand Substitution Variable

When running a report, users often want to restrict the data returned dynamically. SQL*Plus provides this flexibility by means of user variables. Use an ampersand (&) to identify each variable in your SQL statement. You do not need to define the value of each variable.

Notation	Description
& <i>user_variable</i>	Indicates a variable in a SQL statement; if the variable does not exist, SQL*Plus prompts the user for a value (SQL*Plus discards a new variable once it is used.)

The example on the slide creates a SQL statement to prompt the user for an employee number at runtime and displays employee number, name, salary, and department number for that employee.

With the single ampersand, the user is prompted every time the command is executed, if the variable does not exist.

Using the SET VERIFY Command

Toggling the display of the text of a command before and after SQL*Plus replaces substitution variables with values.

```
SQL> SET VERIFY ON
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, sal, deptno
  2  FROM emp
  3 WHERE empno = &employee_num;
```

```
Enter value for employee_num: 7369
old  3: WHERE empno = &employee_num
new  3: WHERE empno = 7369
```

...

8-6

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The SET VERIFY Command

To confirm the changes in the SQL statement, use the SQL*Plus SET VERIFY command. Setting SET VERIFY ON forces SQL*Plus to display the text of a command before and after it replaces substitution variables with values.

The example on the slide displays the old as well as the new value of the column EMPNO.

Character and Date Values with Substitution Variables

Use single quotation marks for date and character values.

```
SQL> SELECT ename, deptno, sal*12
  2  FROM emp
  3 WHERE job='&job_title';
```

```
Enter value for job_title: ANALYST
```

ENAME	DEPTNO	SAL*12
SCOTT	20	36000
FORD	20	36000

Specifying Character and Date Values with Substitution Variables

In a WHERE clause, date and character values must be enclosed within single quotation marks. The same rule applies to the substitution variables.

To avoid entering the quotation marks at runtime, enclose the variable in single quotation marks within the SQL statement itself.

The slide shows a query to retrieve the employee name, department number, and annual salary of all employees based on the job title entered at the prompt by the user.

Note: You can also use functions such as UPPER and LOWER with the ampersand. Use UPPER(' &job_title ') so that the user does not have to enter the job title in uppercase.

Specifying Column Names, Expressions, and Text at Runtime

**Use substitution variables to supplement
the following:**

- **WHERE condition**
- **ORDER BY clause**
- **Column expression**
- **Table name**
- **Entire SELECT statement**

8-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Specifying Column Names, Expressions, and Text at Runtime

Not only can you use the substitution variables in the WHERE clause of a SQL statement, but also these variables can be used to substitute column names, expressions, or text.

Example

Display the employee number and any other column and any condition of employees.

```
SQL> SELECT          empno, &column_name
      2  FROM            emp
      3  WHERE           &condition;
```

```
Enter value for column_name: job
Enter value for condition: deptno = 10
```

```
EMPNO JOB
-----
7839 PRESIDENT
7782 MANAGER
7934 CLERK
```

If you do not enter a value for the substitution variable, you will get an error when you execute the preceding statement.

Specifying Column Names, Expressions, and Text at Runtime

```
SQL> SELECT          empno, ename, job, &column_name  
2   FROM            emp  
3   WHERE           &condition  
4   ORDER BY        &order_column;
```

```
Enter value for column_name: sal  
Enter value for condition: sal>=3000  
Enter value for order_column: ename
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	SAL
7902	FORD	ANALYST	3000
7839	KING	PRESIDENT	5000
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	3000

8-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Specifying Column Names, Expressions, and Text at Runtime (continued)

The slide example displays the employee number, name, job title, and any other column specified by the user at runtime, from the EMP table. The user can also specify the condition for retrieval of rows and the column name by which the resultant data has to be ordered.

Instructor Note

Demo: 18expr.sql

Purpose: To illustrate changing column names and conditions by using substitution variables.

Using the && Substitution Variable

Use the double-ampersand (&&) if you want to reuse the variable value without prompting the user each time.

```
SQL> SELECT          empno, ename, job, &&column_name  
2   FROM            emp  
3   ORDER BY        &column_name;
```

```
Enter value for column_name: deptno  
EMPNO ENAME      JOB          DEPTNO  
-----  
7839 KING        PRESIDENT    10  
7782 CLARK       MANAGER     10  
7934 MILLER     CLERK       10  
...  
14 rows selected.
```

8-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Double-Ampersand Substitution Variable

You can use the double-ampersand (&&) substitution variable if you want to reuse the variable value without prompting the user each time. The user will see the prompt for the value only once. In the example on the slide, the user is asked to give the value for variable *column_name* only once. The value supplied by the user (deptno) is used both for display and ordering of data.

SQL*Plus stores the value supplied by using the DEFINE command; it will use it again whenever you reference the variable name. Once a user variable is in place, you need to use the UNDEFINE command to delete it.

Defining User Variables

- You can predefine variables using one of two SQL*Plus commands:
 - **DEFINE**: Create a CHAR datatype user variable
 - **ACCEPT**: Read user input and store it in a variable
- If you need to predefine a variable that includes spaces, you must enclose the value within single quotation marks when using the **DEFINE** command.

8-11

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Defining User Variables

You can predefine user variables before executing a SELECT statement. SQL*Plus provides two commands for defining and setting user variables: **DEFINE** and **ACCEPT**.

Command	Description
DEFINE <i>variable</i> = <i>value</i>	Creates a CHAR datatype user variable and assigns a value to it
DEFINE <i>variable</i>	Displays the variable, its value, and its datatype
DEFINE	Displays all user variables with value and datatype
ACCEPT (<i>see syntax on next slide</i>)	Reads a line of user input and stores it in a variable

Instructor Note

Mention that SQL*Plus commands can continue onto multiple lines, and require the continuation character, the hyphen.

The ACCEPT Command

- Creates a customized prompt when accepting user input
- Explicitly defines a NUMBER or DATE datatype variable
- Hides user input for security reasons

```
ACCEPT variable [datatype] [FORMAT format]  
[PROMPT text] [HIDE]
```

8-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The ACCEPT Command

In the syntax:

<i>variable</i>	is the name of the variable that stores the value (If it does not exist, SQL*Plus creates it.)
<i>datatype</i>	is NUMBER, CHAR, or DATE (CHAR has a maximum length limit of 240 bytes. DATE checks against a format model, and the datatype is CHAR.)
FOR[MAT] <i>format</i>	specifies the format model—for example, A10 or 9.999
PROMPT <i>text</i>	displays the text before the user can enter the value
HIDE	suppresses what the user enters—for example, a password

Note: Do not prefix the SQL*Plus substitution parameter with the ampersand (&) when referencing the substitution parameter in the ACCEPT command.

Instructor Note

Demo: 18prompt.sql

Purpose: To illustrate using the ACCEPT and PROMPT commands.

Using the ACCEPT Command

```
ACCEPT dept PROMPT 'Provide the department name: '
SELECT *
FROM dept
WHERE dname = UPPER('&dept')
/
```

```
Provide the department name: Sales
```

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
-----	-----	-----
30	SALES	CHICAGO

8-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using the ACCEPT Command

The ACCEPT command reads in a variable named DEPT. The prompt that it displays when asking the user for the variable is “Provide the department name:”. The SELECT statement then takes the department value that the user enters and uses it to retrieve the appropriate row from the DEPT table.

If the user enters a *valid* value for department name, the SELECT statement executes in the same way as any other SELECT statement, taking the user-entered value and using it in the WHERE clause to compare with DNAME.

Note that the & character does not appear with the DEPT variable in the ACCEPT command. The & appears only in the SELECT statement.

Guidelines

- The ACCEPT and DEFINE commands will create a variable if the variable does not exist; these commands will automatically redefine a variable if it exists.
- When using the DEFINE command, use single quotation marks (') to enclose a string that contains an embedded space.
- Use the ACCEPT command to:
 - Give a customized prompt when accepting user input; otherwise, you will see the default “Enter value for variable”
 - Explicitly define a NUMBER or DATE datatype variable
 - Hide user input for security reasons

DEFINE and UNDEFINE Commands

- A variable remains defined until you either:
 - Use the UNDEFINE command to clear it
 - Exit SQL*Plus
- You can verify your changes with the DEFINE command.
- To define variables for every session, modify your login.sql file so that the variables are created at startup.

8-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The DEFINE and UNDEFINE Commands

Variables are defined until you either:

- Issue the UNDEFINE command on a variable
- Exit SQL*Plus

When you undefine variables, you can verify your changes with the DEFINE command. When you exit SQL*Plus, variables defined during that session are lost. To define those variables for every session, modify your login.sql file so that those variables are created at startup.

Using the DEFINE Command

- Create a variable to hold the department name.

```
SQL> DEFINE deptname = sales
SQL> DEFINE deptname
```

```
DEFINE DEPTNAME      = "sales" (CHAR)
```

- Use the variable as you would any other variable.

```
SQL> SELECT *
  2  FROM    dept
  3  WHERE   dname = UPPER('&deptname');
```

8-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using the DEFINE Command

You can use the DEFINE command to create a variable and then use the variable as you would any other variable. The example on the slide creates a variable DEPTNAME that contains the department name, SALES. The SQL statement then uses this variable to display the number and location of the sales department.

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
-----	-----	-----
30	SALES	CHICAGO

To erase the variable, you use the UNDEFINE command:

```
SQL> UNDEFINE deptname
SQL> DEFINE deptname
symbol deptname is UNDEFINED
```

Customizing the SQL*Plus Environment

- Use SET commands to control current session.

```
SET system_variable value
```

- Verify what you have set by using the SHOW command.

```
SQL> SET ECHO ON
```

```
SQL> SHOW ECHO  
echo ON
```

Customizing the SQL*Plus Environment

You can control the environment in which SQL*Plus is currently operating by using the SET commands.

In the syntax:

<i>system_variable</i>	is a variable that controls one aspect of the session environment
<i>value</i>	is a value for the system variable

You can verify what you have set by using the SHOW command. The SHOW command on the slide checks whether ECHO had been set on or off.

To see all SET variable values, use the SHOW ALL command.

For more information, see *SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference*, Release 8, "Command Reference."

SET Command Variables

- **ARRAYSIZE {20 | *n*}**
- **COLSEP {_ | *text*}**
- **FEEDBACK {6 | *n* |OFF | ON}**
- **HEADING {OFF | ON}**
- **LINESIZE {80 | *n*}**
- **LONG {80 | *n*}**
- **PAGESIZE {24 | *n*}**
- **PAUSE {OFF | ON | *text*}**
- **TERMOUT {OFF | ON}**

8-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SET Command Variables

SET Variable and Values	Description
ARRAY[SIZE] { <u>20</u> <i>n</i> }	Sets the database data fetch size
COLSEP {_ <i>text</i> }	Sets text to be printed between columns (The default is single space.)
FEED[BACK] { <u>6</u> <i>n</i> OFF ON}	Displays the number of records returned by a query when the query selects at least <i>n</i> records
HEA[DING] {OFF <u>ON</u> }	Determines whether column headings are displayed in reports
LIN[ESIZE] { <u>80</u> <i>n</i> }	Sets the number of characters per line to <i>n</i> for reports
LONG { <u>80</u> <i>n</i> }	Sets the maximum width for displaying LONG values
PAGES[IZE] { <u>24</u> <i>n</i> }	Specifies the number of lines per page of output
PAU[SE] { <u>OFF</u> ON <i>text</i> }	Allows you to control scrolling of your terminal (You must press [Return] after seeing each pause.)
TERM[OUT] {OFF <u>ON</u> }	Determines whether output is displayed on screen

Note: The value *n* represents a numeric value. The underlined values indicate default values. If you enter no value with the variable, SQL*Plus assumes the default value.

Saving Customizations in the `login.sql` File

- The `login.sql` file contains standard SET and other SQL*Plus commands that are implemented at login.
- You can modify `login.sql` to contain additional SET commands.

Default Settings Using the `login.sql` File

The `login.sql` file contains standard SET and other SQL*Plus commands that you may require for every session. The file is read and commands are implemented at login. When you log out of your session, all customized settings are lost.

Changing the Default Settings

The settings implemented by `login.sql` can be changed during the current session. Changes made are current only for that session. As soon as you log out, those settings are lost.

Add permanent changes to settings to the `login.sql` file.

SQL*Plus Format Commands

- **COLUMN [column option]**
- **TTITLE [text | OFF | ON]**
- **BTITLE [text | OFF | ON]**
- **BREAK [ON report_element]**

8-19

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Obtaining More Readable Reports

You can control the report features by using the following commands:

Command	Description
COL[UMN] [column option]	Controls column formats
TTI[TLE] [text OFF ON]	Specifies a header to appear at the top of each page
BTI[TLE] [text OFF ON]	Specifies a footer to appear at the bottom of each page of the report
BRE[AK] [ON report_element]	Suppresses duplicate values and sections rows of data with line feeds

Guidelines

- All format commands remain in effect until the end of the SQL*Plus session or until the format setting is overwritten or cleared.
- Remember to reset your SQL*Plus settings to default values after every report.
- There is no command for setting a SQL*Plus variable to its default value; you must know the specific value or log out and log in again.
- If you give an alias to your column, you must reference the alias name, not the column name.

The COLUMN Command

Controls display of a column

```
COL[UMN] [{column|alias} [option]]
```

- **CLE[AR]: Clears any column formats**
- **FOR[MAT] *format*: Changes the display of the column using a format model**
- **HEA[DING] *text*: Sets the column heading**
- **JUS[TIFY] {*align*}: Aligns the column heading to be left, center, or right**

8-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

COLUMN Command Options

Option	Description
CLE[AR]	Clears any column formats
FOR[MAT] <i>format</i>	Changes the display of the column data
HEA[DING] <i>text</i>	Sets the column heading (A vertical line () will force a line feed in the heading if you do not use justification.)
JUS[TIFY] { <i>align</i> }	Justifies the column heading (not the data) to be left, center, or right
NOPRI[NT]	Hides the column
NUL[L] <i>text</i>	Specifies text to be displayed for null values
PRI[NT]	Shows the column
TRU[NCATED]	Truncates the string at the end of the first line of display
WRA[PPED]	Wraps the end of the string to the next line

Using the COLUMN Command

- **Create column headings.**

```
COLUMN ename HEADING 'Employee|Name' FORMAT A15  
COLUMN sal JUSTIFY LEFT FORMAT $99,990.00  
COLUMN mgr FORMAT 999999999 NULL 'No manager'
```

- **Display the current setting for the ENAME column.**

```
COLUMN ename
```

- **Clear settings for the ENAME column.**

```
COLUMN ename CLEAR
```

Displaying or Clearing Settings

To show or clear the current COLUMN command settings, use the following commands:

Command	Description
COL[UMN] <i>column</i>	Displays the current settings for the specified column
COL[UMN]	Displays the current settings for all columns
COL[UMN] <i>column</i> CLE[AR]	Clears the settings for the specified column
CLE[AR] COL[UMN]	Clears the settings for all columns

If you have a lengthy command, you can continue it on the next line by ending the current line with a hyphen (-).

COLUMN Format Models

Element	Description	Example	Result
A <i>n</i>	Sets a display width of <i>n</i>	N/A	N/A
9	Single zero-suppression digit	999999	1234
0	Enforces leading zero	099999	01234
\$	Floating dollar sign	\$9999	\$1234
L	Local currency	L9999	L1234
.	Position of decimal point	9999.99	1234.00
,	Thousand separator	9,999	1,234

8-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

COLUMN Format Models

The slide displays sample COLUMN format models.

The Oracle Server displays a string of pound signs (#) in place of a whole number whose digits exceed the number of digits provided in the format model. It also displays pound signs in place of a value whose format model is alphanumeric but whose actual value is numeric.

Using the BREAK Command

Suppresses duplicates and sections rows

- **To suppress duplicates**

```
SQL> BREAK ON ename ON job
```

- **To section out rows at break values**

```
SQL> BREAK ON ename SKIP 4 ON job SKIP 2
```

8-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The BREAK Command

Use the BREAK command to section out rows and suppress duplicate values. To ensure that the BREAK command works effectively, use the ORDER BY clause to order the columns that you are breaking on.

Syntax

```
BREAK on column[|alias|row] [skip n|dup|page] on .. [on report]
```

where:

<i>page</i>	throws a new page when the break value changes
<i>skip n</i>	skips <i>n</i> number of lines when the break value changes
Breaks can be active on:	
– Column	
– Row	
– Page	
– Report	

duplicate displays duplicate values

Clear all BREAK settings by using the CLEAR command:

```
CLEAR BREAK
```

Using the TTITLE and BTITLE Commands

- Display headers and footers.

```
TTI[TLE] [text|OFF|ON]
```

- Set the report header.

```
SQL> TTITLE 'Salary|Report'
```

- Set the report footer.

```
SQL> BTITLE 'Confidential'
```

8-24

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The TTITLE and BTITLE Commands

Use the TTITLE command to format page headers and the BTITLE command for footers. Footers appear at the bottom of the page according to the PAGESIZE value.

The syntax for BTITLE and TTITLE is identical. Only the syntax for TTITLE is shown. You can use the vertical bar (|) to split the text of the title across several lines.

In the syntax:

text represents the title text (Enter single quotes if the text is more than one word.)

The TTITLE example on the slide sets the report header to display Salary centered on one line and Report centered below it. The BTITLE example sets the report footer to display Confidential. TTITLE automatically puts date and page number on the report.

Note: The slide gives an abridged syntax for TTITLE and BTITLE. Various options for TTITLE and BTITLE are covered in another SQL course.

Instructor Note

SQL*Plus 3.3 introduced the commands REPHEADER and REPFOOTER. REPHEADER places and formats a specified report header at the top of each report or lists the current REPHEADER definition. REPFOOTER places and formats a specified report footer at the bottom of each report or lists the current REPFOOTER definition.

Creating a Script File to Run a Report

- 1. Create the SQL SELECT statement.**
- 2. Save the SELECT statement to a script file.**
- 3. Load the script file into an editor.**
- 4. Add formatting commands before the SELECT statement.**
- 5. Verify that the termination character follows the SELECT statement.**

8-25

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating a Script File to Run a Report

You can either enter each of the SQL*Plus commands at the SQL prompt or put all the commands, including the SELECT statement, in a command (or script) file. A typical script consists of at least one SELECT statement and several SQL*Plus commands.

How to Create a Script File

1. Create the SQL SELECT statement at the SQL prompt. Ensure that the data required for the report is accurate before you save the statement to a file and apply formatting commands. Ensure that the relevant ORDER BY clause is included if you intend to use breaks.
2. Save the SELECT statement to a script file.
3. Edit the script file to enter the SQL*Plus commands.
4. Add the required formatting commands before the SELECT statement. Be certain not to place SQL*Plus commands within the SELECT statement.
5. Verify that the SELECT statement is followed by a run character, either a semicolon (;) or a slash (/).

Creating a Script File to Run a Report

- 6. Clear formatting commands after the SELECT statement.**
- 7. Save the script file.**
- 8. Enter “**START *filename***” to run the script.**

How to Create a Script File (continued)

6. Add the format-clearing SQL*Plus commands after the run character. As an alternative, you can call a reset file that contains all the format-clearing commands.
7. Save the script file with your changes.
8. In SQL*Plus, run the script file by entering **START *filename*** or **@*filename***. This command is required to read and execute the script file.

Guidelines

- You can include blank lines between SQL*Plus commands in a script.
- You can abbreviate SQL*Plus commands.
- Include reset commands at the end of the file to restore the original SQL*Plus environment.

REM represents a remark or comment in SQL*Plus.

Sample Report

Fri Oct 24		page 1
Employee Report		
Job Category	Employee	Salary
CLERK	ADAMS	\$1,100.00
	JAMES	\$950.00
	MILLER	\$1,300.00
	SMITH	\$800.00
MANAGER	BLAKE	\$2,850.00
	CLARK	\$2,450.00
	JONES	\$2,975.00
SALESMAN	ALLEN	\$1,600.00
	MARTIN	\$1,250.00
	TURNER	\$1,500.00
	WARD	\$1,250.00

Confidential

8-27

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Example

Create a script file to create a report that displays the job title, name, and salary for every employee whose salary is less than \$3000. Add a centered, two-lined header that reads Employee Report and a centered footer that reads Confidential. Rename the job title column to read Job Category split over two lines. Rename the employee name column to read Employee. Rename the salary column to read Salary and format it as \$2,500.00.

```
SET PAGESIZE 37
SET LINESIZE 60
SET FEEDBACK OFF
TTITLE 'Employee|Report'
BTITLE 'Confidential'
BREAK ON job
COLUMN job    HEADING 'Job|Category' FORMAT A15
COLUMN ename   HEADING 'Employee' FORMAT A15
COLUMN sal     HEADING 'Salary' FORMAT $99,999.99
REM ** Insert SELECT statement
SELECT          job, ename, sal
FROM            emp
WHERE           sal < 3000
ORDER BY        job, ename
/
SET FEEDBACK ON
REM clear all formatting commands ...
```

Summary

- **Use SQL*Plus substitution variables to temporarily store values.**
- **Use SET commands to control current SQL*Plus environment.**
- **Use the COLUMN command to control the display of a column.**
- **Use the BREAK command to suppress duplicates and section rows.**
- **Use TTITLE and BTITLE to display headers and footers.**

8-28

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Summary

Substitution variables are useful for running reports. They allow flexibility to replace values in a WHERE clause, column names, and expressions. You can customize reports by writing script files with:

- Single ampersand substitution variables
- The ACCEPT command
- The DEFINE command
- The UNDEFINE command
- Substitution variables in the command line

You can create a more readable report by using the following commands:

- COLUMN
- TTITLE
- BTITLE
- BREAK

Practice Overview

- **Creating a query to display values using substitution variables**
- **Starting a command file containing variables**
- **Using the ACCEPT command**

8-29

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Practice Overview

This practice gives you the opportunity to create files that can be run interactively by using substitution variables to create runtime selection criteria.

Practice 8

Determine whether the following statements are true or false:

1. A single ampersand substitution variable prompts at most once.
True/False
2. The ACCEPT command is a SQL command.
True/False
3. Write a script file to display the employee name, job, and hire date for all employees who started between a given range. Concatenate the name and job together, separated by a space and comma, and label the column Employees. Prompt the user for the two ranges using the ACCEPT command. Use the format MM/DD/YYYY. Save the script file as p8q3.sql.

```
Please enter the low date range ('MM/DD/YYYY'): 01/01/1981
Please enter the high date range ('MM/DD/YYYY'): 01/01/1982
EMPLOYEES          HIREDATE
-----
KING, PRESIDENT    17-NOV-81
BLAKE, MANAGER     01-MAY-81
CLARK, MANAGER     09-JUN-81
JONES, MANAGER     02-APR-81
MARTIN, SALESMAN   28-SEP-81
ALLEN, SALESMAN    20-FEB-81
TURNER, SALESMAN   08-SEP-81
JAMES, CLERK       03-DEC-81
WARD, SALESMAN     22-FEB-81
FORD, ANALYST      03-DEC-81
10 rows selected.
```

4. Write a script to display the employee name, job, and department name for a given location. The search condition should allow for case-insensitive searches of the department location. Save the script file as p8q4.sql.

```
Please enter the location name: Dallas
EMPLOYEE NAME JOB          DEPARTMENT NAME
-----
JONES        MANAGER        RESEARCH
FORD         ANALYST        RESEARCH
SMITH        CLERK          RESEARCH
SCOTT        ANALYST        RESEARCH
ADAMS        CLERK          RESEARCH
```

Practice 8 (continued)

5. Modify p8q4.sql to create a report containing the department name, employee name, hire date, salary, and each employee's annual salary for all employees in a given location. Prompt the user for the location. Label the columns DEPARTMENT NAME, EMPLOYEE NAME, START DATE, SALARY, and ANNUAL SALARY, placing the labels on multiple lines. Resave the script as p8q5.sql.

Please enter the location name: Chicago

DEPARTMENT NAME	EMPLOYEE NAME	START DATE	SALARY	ANNUAL SALARY
SALES	BLAKE	01-MAY-81	\$2,850.00	\$34,200.00
	MARTIN	28-SEP-81	\$1,250.00	\$15,000.00
	ALLEN	20-FEB-81	\$1,600.00	\$19,200.00
	TURNER	08-SEP-81	\$1,500.00	\$18,000.00
	JAMES	03-DEC-81	\$950.00	\$11,400.00
	WARD	22-FEB-81	\$1,250.00	\$15,000.00

9

Manipulating Data

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	40 minutes	Lecture
	30 minutes	Practice
	70 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **Describe each DML statement**
- **Insert rows into a table**
- **Update rows in a table**
- **Delete rows from a table**
- **Control transactions**

Lesson Aim

In this lesson, you will learn how to insert rows into a table, update existing rows in a table, and delete existing rows from a table. You will also learn how to control transactions with the COMMIT, SAVEPOINT, and ROLLBACK statements.

Data Manipulation Language

- A DML statement is executed when you:
 - Add new rows to a table
 - Modify existing rows in a table
 - Remove existing rows from a table
- A *transaction* consists of a collection of DML statements that form a logical unit of work.

9-3

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Data Manipulation Language

Data manipulation language (DML) is a core part of SQL. When you want to add, update, or delete data in the database, you execute a DML statement. A collection of DML statements that form a logical unit of work is called a *transaction*.

Consider a banking database. When a bank customer transfers money from a savings account to a checking account, the transaction might consist of three separate operations: decrease the savings account, increase the checking account, and record the transaction in the transaction journal. The Oracle Server must guarantee that all three SQL statements are performed to maintain the accounts in proper balance. When something prevents one of the statements in the transaction from executing, the other statements of the transaction must be undone.

Instructor Note

DML statements can be issued directly in SQL*Plus, performed automatically by tools such as Oracle Developer or programmed with tools such as the 3GL precompilers.

Every table has INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE privileges associated with it. These privileges are automatically granted to the creator of the table, but in general they must be explicitly granted to other users.

Starting with Oracle 7.2, you can place a subquery in the place of the table name in an UPDATE statement, essentially the same way a view is used.

Adding a New Row to a Table

50	DEVELOPMENT	DETROIT
----	-------------	---------

New row

DEPT

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

“...insert a new row
into DEPT table...”

DEPT

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
50	DEVELOPMENT	DETROIT

Adding a New Row to a Table

The slide graphic adds a new department to the DEPT table.

The INSERT Statement

- Add new rows to a table by using the **INSERT statement**.

```
INSERT INTO  table [(column [, column...])]  
VALUES      (value [, value...]);
```

- Only one row is inserted at a time with this syntax.

Adding a New Row to a Table (continued)

You can add new rows to a table by issuing the INSERT statement.

In the syntax:

<i>table</i>	is the name of the table
<i>column</i>	is the name of the column in the table to populate
<i>value</i>	is the corresponding value for the column

Note: This statement with the VALUES clause adds only one row at a time to a table.

Inserting New Rows

- Insert a new row containing values for each column.
- List values in the default order of the columns in the table.
- Optionally list the columns in the INSERT clause.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO      dept (deptno, dname, loc)
  2  VALUES            (50, 'DEVELOPMENT', 'DETROIT');
  1 row created.
```

- Enclose character and date values within single quotation marks.

9-6

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Adding a New Row to a Table (continued)

Because you can insert a new row that contains values for each column, the column list is not required in the INSERT clause. However, if you do not use the column list, the values must be listed according to the default order of the columns in the table.

```
SQL> DESCRIBE dept
```

Name	Null?	Type
DEPTNO	NOT NULL	NUMBER (2)
DNAME		VARCHAR2 (14)
LOC		VARCHAR2 (13)

For clarity, use the column list in the INSERT clause.

Enclose character and date values within single quotation marks; do not enclose numeric values within single quotation marks.

Instructor Note

Number values should not be enclosed in single quotes, because implicit conversion may take place for numeric values assigned to NUMBER datatype columns if single quotes are included.

Inserting Rows with Null Values

- **Implicit method:** Omit the column from the column list.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO      dept (deptno, dname)
  2  VALUES              (60, 'MIS');
1 row created.
```

- **Explicit method:** Specify the NULL keyword.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO      dept
  2  VALUES              (70, 'FINANCE', NULL);
1 row created.
```

Methods for Inserting Null Values

Method	Description
Implicit	Omit the column from the column list.
Explicit	Specify the NULL keyword in the VALUES list Specify the empty string (' ') in the VALUES list; for character strings and dates only.

Be sure that the targeted column allows null values by verifying the Null? status from the SQL*Plus DESCRIBE command.

The Oracle Server automatically enforces all datatypes, data ranges, and data integrity constraints. Any column that is not listed explicitly obtains a null value in the new row.

Instructor Note

Common errors that can occur during user input:

- Mandatory value missing for a NOT NULL column
- Duplicate value violates uniqueness constraint
- Foreign key constraint violated
- CHECK constraint violated
- Datatype mismatch
- Value too wide to fit in column

Inserting Special Values

The SYSDATE function records the current date and time.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO      emp (empno, ename, job,
  2                      mgr, hiredate, sal, comm,
  3                      deptno)
  4  VALUES              (7196, 'GREEN', 'SALESMAN',
  5                      7782, SYSDATE, 2000, NULL,
  6                      10);
1 row created.
```

9-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Inserting Special Values by Using SQL Functions

You can use pseudocolumns to enter special values in your table.

The slide example records information for employee Green in the EMP table. It supplies the current date and time in the HIREDATE column. It uses the SYSDATE function for current date and time.

You can also use the USER function when inserting rows in a table. The USER function records the current username.

Confirming Additions to the Table

```
SQL> SELECT  empno, ename, job, hiredate, comm
  2  FROM    emp
  3  WHERE   empno = 7196;
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	HIREDATE	COMM
7196	GREEN	SALESMAN	01-DEC-97	

Inserting Specific Date Values

- Add a new employee.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO emp
  2  VALUES          (2296, 'AROMANO', 'SALESMAN', 7782,
  3                      TO_DATE('FEB 3, 1997', 'MON DD, YYYY'),
  4                      1300, NULL, 10);
1 row created.
```

- Verify your addition.

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	MGR	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
2296	AROMANO	SALESMAN	7782	03-FEB-97	1300		10

Inserting Specific Date and Time Values

The format DD-MON-YY is usually used to insert a date value. With this format, recall that the century defaults to the current century. Because the date also contains time information, the default time is midnight (00:00:00).

If a date must be entered in a format other than the default format—for example, another century and/or a specific time—you must use the TO_DATE function.

The example on the slide records information for employee Aromano in the EMP table. It sets the HIREDATE column to be February 3, 1997.

If the RR format is set, the century may not be the current one.

Inserting Values by Using Substitution Variables

Create an interactive script by using SQL*Plus substitution parameters.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO dept (deptno, dname, loc)
  2  VALUES      (&department_id,
  3                      '&department_name', '&location');
```

```
Enter value for department_id: 80
Enter value for department_name: EDUCATION
Enter value for location: ATLANTA

1 row created.
```

9-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Inserting Values by Using Substitution Variables

You can produce an INSERT statement that allows the user to add values interactively by using SQL*Plus substitution variables.

The slide example records information for a department in the DEPT table. It prompts the user for the department number, department name, and location.

For date and character values, the ampersand and the variable name are enclosed in single quotation marks.

Instructor Note

Be sure to mention the following points about the example:

- The names of the SQL*Plus substitution parameters do not have to match the corresponding column names.
- Substitution parameters are lexical variables. Whatever characters the user enters are substituted as text for the variable name.
- The SQL*Plus SET VERIFY command lists the substitution before executing the statement.

Creating a Script with Customized Prompts

- ACCEPT stores the value in a variable.
- PROMPT displays your customized text.

```
ACCEPT      department_id PROMPT 'Please enter the -  
          department number:'  
  
ACCEPT      department_name PROMPT 'Please enter -  
          the department name:'  
  
ACCEPT      location PROMPT 'Please enter the -  
          location:'  
  
INSERT INTO dept (deptno, dname, loc)  
VALUES      (&department_id, '&department_name',  
          '&location');
```

9-11

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating a Script to Manipulate Data

You can save your command with substitution variables to a file and execute the file. Each time you execute the command, it will prompt you for new values. Customize the prompts by using the SQL*Plus ACCEPT command.

The example on the slide records information for a department in the DEPT table. It prompts the user for the department number, department name, and location by using customized prompt messages.

```
Please enter the department number: 90  
Please enter the department name: PAYROLL  
Please enter the location: HOUSTON
```

1 row created.

Do not prefix the SQL*Plus substitution parameter with the ampersand (&) when referencing it in the ACCEPT command. Use a dash (-) to continue a SQL*Plus command on the next line.

Instructor Note

Be sure to mention the following points about the script:

- Do not prefix the SQL*Plus substitution parameter with the ampersand in the ACCEPT command.
- Use a dash to continue a SQL*Plus command on the next line.
- Add a space after the colon in the PROMPT command.

Copying Rows from Another Table

- Write your **INSERT statement with a subquery**.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO managers(id, name, salary, hiredate)
  2          SELECT empno, ename, sal, hiredate
  3          FROM   emp
  4          WHERE  job = 'MANAGER';
3 rows created.
```

- Do not use the **VALUES clause**.
- Match the number of columns in the **INSERT clause to those in the subquery**.

9-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Copying Rows from Another Table

You can use the **INSERT** statement to add rows to a table where the values are derived from existing tables. In place of the **VALUES** clause, you use a subquery.

Syntax

```
INSERT INTO table [ column (, column) ]
               subquery;
```

where: *table* is the table name
column is the name of the column in the table to populate
subquery is the subquery that returns rows into the table

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “**SELECT**,” Subqueries section.

The number of columns and their datatypes in the column list of the **INSERT** clause must match the number of values and their datatypes in the subquery.

Instructor Note

Please run the script `lab9_12.sql` to create the `managers` table. Do not get into too many details on copying rows from another table.

Changing Data in a Table

EMP

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	...	DEPTNO
7839	KING	PRESIDENT		10
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER		30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER		10
7566	JONES	MANAGER		20
...				

“...update a row
in EMP table...”

EMP

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	...	DEPTNO
7839	KING	PRESIDENT		10
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER		30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER		20
7566	JONES	MANAGER		20
...				

Changing Data in a Table

The slide graphic changes the department number for Clark from 10 to 20.

The UPDATE Statement

- **Modify existing rows with the UPDATE statement.**

```
UPDATE      table
SET         column = value [, column = value, ...]
[WHERE      condition];
```

- **Update more than one row at a time, if required.**

9-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Updating Rows

You can modify existing rows by using the UPDATE statement.

In the above syntax:

<i>table</i>	is the name of the table
<i>column</i>	is the name of the column in the table to populate
<i>value</i>	is the corresponding value or subquery for the column
<i>condition</i>	identifies the rows to be updated and is composed of column names expressions, constants, subqueries, and comparison operators

Confirm the update operation by querying the table to display the updated rows.

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “UPDATE.”

Note: In general, use the primary key to identify a single row. Using other columns may unexpectedly cause several rows to be updated. For example, identifying a single row in the EMP table by name is dangerous because more than one employee may have the same name.

Instructor Note

Demo: 19sel.sql, 19upd.sql

Purpose: To illustrate displaying the initial state of data, performing updates, and viewing results.

Updating Rows in a Table

- Specific row or rows are modified when you specify the WHERE clause.

```
SQL> UPDATE emp
  2 SET deptno = 20
  3 WHERE empno = 7782;
1 row updated.
```

- All rows in the table are modified if you omit the WHERE clause.

```
SQL> UPDATE employee
  2 SET deptno = 20;
14 rows updated.
```

9-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Updating Rows (continued)

The UPDATE statement modifies specific rows, if the WHERE clause is specified. The slide example transfers employee 7782 (Clark) to department 20.

If you omit the WHERE clause, all the rows in the table are modified.

```
SQL> SELECT ename, deptno
  2 FROM employee;
```

ENAME	DEPTNO
KING	20
BLAKE	20
CLARK	20
JONES	20
MARTIN	20
ALLEN	20
TURNER	20
...	

```
14 rows selected.
```

Note: The EMPLOYEE table has the same data as the EMP table.

Updating with Multiple-Column Subquery

**Update employee 7698's job and department
to match that of employee 7499.**

```
SQL> UPDATE emp
  2 SET      (job, deptno) =
  3                               (SELECT job, deptno
  4                                FROM   emp
  5                               WHERE  empno = 7499)
  6 WHERE    empno = 7698;
1 row updated.
```

9-16

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Updating Rows with a Multiple-Column Subquery

Multiple-column subqueries can be implemented in the SET clause of an UPDATE statement.

Syntax

```
UPDATE table
SET      (column, column, ...) =
          (SELECT column, column, ...
           FROM   table
           WHERE  condition)
WHERE   condition;
```

Instructor Note

It may be worth showing participants that the results would be the same for the example on the slide if two different subqueries were used in the SET clause as illustrated below:

```
SQL> UPDATE emp
  2 SET      job      = (SELECT job FROM emp
  3                           WHERE empno = 7499),
  4             deptno = (SELECT deptno FROM dept
  5                           WHERE dname = 'SALES')
  6 WHERE    empno = 7698;
```

Updating Rows Based on Another Table

Use subqueries in UPDATE statements to update rows in a table based on values from another table.

```
SQL> UPDATE employee
  2  SET      deptno = (SELECT      deptno
  3          FROM      emp
  4          WHERE      empno = 7788)
  5  WHERE      job      = (SELECT      job
  6          FROM      emp
  7          WHERE      empno = 7788);
2 rows updated.
```

9-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Updating Rows Based on Another Table

You can use subqueries in UPDATE statements to update rows in a table. The example on the slide updates the EMPLOYEE table based on the values from the EMP table. It changes the department number of all employees with employee 7788's job title to employee 7788's current department number.

Updating Rows: Integrity Constraint Error

```
SQL> UPDATE emp  
2 SET deptno = 55  
3 WHERE deptno = 10;
```

```
UPDATE emp  
*  
ERROR at line 1:  
ORA-02291: integrity constraint (USR.EMP_DEPTNO_FK)  
violated - parent key not found
```

9-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Integrity Constraint Error

If you attempt to update a record with a value that is tied to an integrity constraint, you will experience an error.

In the example on the slide, department number 55 does not exist in the parent table, DEPT, and so you receive the *parent key* violation ORA-02291.

Note: Integrity constraints ensure that the data adheres to a predefined set of rules. A subsequent lesson will cover integrity constraints in greater depth.

Instructor Note

Explain integrity constraints and review the concept of primary key and foreign key.

Removing a Row from a Table

DEPT

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
50	DEVELOPMENT	DETROIT
60	MIS	
...		

“...delete a row
from DEPT table...”

DEPT



DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
60	MIS	
...		

Removing a Row from a Table

The slide graphic removes the DEVELOPMENT department from the DEPT table (assuming that there are no constraints defined on the DEPT table).

Instructor Note

After all the rows have been eliminated with the DELETE statement, only the data structure of the table remains. A more efficient method of emptying a table is with the TRUNCATE statement. You can use the TRUNCATE statement to quickly remove all rows from a table or cluster. Removing rows with the TRUNCATE statement is faster than removing them with the DELETE statement for the following reasons:

- The TRUNCATE statement is a data definition language (DDL) statement and generates no rollback information. It will be covered in a subsequent lesson.
- Truncating a table does not fire the DELETE triggers of the table.
- If the table is the parent of a referential integrity constraint, you cannot truncate the table. Disable the constraint before issuing the TRUNCATE statement.

The DELETE Statement

You can remove existing rows from a table by using the DELETE statement.

```
DELETE [FROM] table  
[WHERE condition] ;
```

9-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Deleting Rows

You can remove existing rows by using the DELETE statement.

In the syntax:

<i>table</i>	is the table name
<i>condition</i>	identifies the rows to be deleted and is composed of column names, expressions, constants, subqueries, and comparison operators

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “DELETE.”

Instructor Note

The DELETE statement does not ask for confirmation. However, the delete operation is not made permanent until the data transaction is committed. Therefore, you can undo the operation with the ROLLBACK statement if you make a mistake.

Deleting Rows from a Table

- Specific rows are deleted when you specify the WHERE clause.

```
SQL> DELETE FROM department
  2  WHERE dname = 'DEVELOPMENT';
  1 row deleted.
```

- All rows in the table are deleted if you omit the WHERE clause.

```
SQL> DELETE FROM department;
  4 rows deleted.
```

9-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Deleting Rows (continued)

You can delete specific rows by specifying the WHERE clause in the DELETE statement. The slide example deletes the DEVELOPMENT department from the DEPARTMENT table. You can confirm the delete operation by displaying the deleted rows using the SELECT statement.

```
SQL> SELECT *
  2  FROM department
  3  WHERE dname = 'DEVELOPMENT';
no rows selected.
```

Example

Remove all employees who started after January 1, 1997.

```
SQL> DELETE FROM emp
  2  WHERE hiredate > TO_DATE('01.01.1997', 'DD.MM.YYYY');
  1 row deleted.
```

If you omit the WHERE clause, all rows in the table are deleted. The second example on the slide deletes all the rows from the DEPARTMENT table because no WHERE clause has been specified.

Note: The DEPARTMENT table has the same data as the DEPT table.

Deleting Rows Based on Another Table

Use subqueries in DELETE statements to remove rows from a table based on values from another table.

```
SQL> DELETE FROM      employee
  2  WHERE          deptno =
  3                                deptno
  4                                (SELECT      deptno
  5                                FROM        dept
  6                                WHERE      dname = 'SALES') ;
  6 rows deleted.
```

9-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Deleting Rows Based on Another Table

You can use subqueries to delete rows from a table based on values from another table. The example on the slide deletes all the employees who are in department 30. The subquery searches the DEPT table to find the department number for the SALES department. The subquery then feeds the department number to the main query, which deletes rows of data from the EMPLOYEE table based on this department number.

Deleting Rows: Integrity Constraint Error

```
SQL> DELETE FROM dept  
2 WHERE deptno = 10;
```

You cannot delete a row
that contains a primary key
that is used as a foreign key
in another table.

```
DELETE FROM dept
```

```
*
```

```
ERROR at line 1:
```

```
ORA-02292: integrity constraint (USR.EMP_DEPTNO_FK)  
violated - child record found
```

9-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Integrity Constraint Error

If you attempt to delete a record with a value that is tied to an integrity constraint, you will experience an error.

The example on the slide tries to delete department number 10 from the DEPT table, but it results in an error because department number is used as a foreign key in the EMP table. If the parent record that you attempt to delete has child records, then you receive the *child record found* violation ORA-02292.

Instructor Note

If referential integrity constraints are in use, you might receive an Oracle Server error message when you attempt to delete a row. However, if the referential integrity constraint contains the ON DELETE CASCADE option, then the selected row and its children are deleted from their respective tables.

Database Transactions

Consist of one of the following statements:

- **DML statements that make up one consistent change to the data**
- **One DDL statement**
- **One DCL statement**

9-24

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Database Transactions

The Oracle Server ensures data consistency based on transactions. Transactions give you more flexibility and control when changing data, and they ensure data consistency in the event of user process failure or system failure.

Transactions consist of DML statements that make up one consistent change to the data. For example, a transfer of funds between two accounts should include the debit to one account and the credit to another account in the same amount. Both actions should either fail or succeed together. The credit should not be committed without the debit.

Transaction Types

Type	Description
Data manipulation language (DML)	Consists of any number of DML statements that the Oracle Server treats as a single entity or a logical unit of work
Data definition language (DDL)	Consists of only one DDL statement
Data control language (DCL)	Consists of only one DCL statement

Database Transactions

- **Begin when the first executable SQL statement is executed**
- **End with one of the following events:**
 - **COMMIT or ROLLBACK is issued**
 - **DDL or DCL statement executes (automatic commit)**
 - **User exits**
 - **System crashes**

9-25

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

When Does a Transaction Start and End?

A transaction begins when the first executable SQL statement is encountered and terminates when one of the following occurs:

- A COMMIT or ROLLBACK statement is issued
- A DDL statement, such as CREATE, is issued
- A DCL statement is issued
- The user exits SQL*Plus
- A machine fails or the system crashes

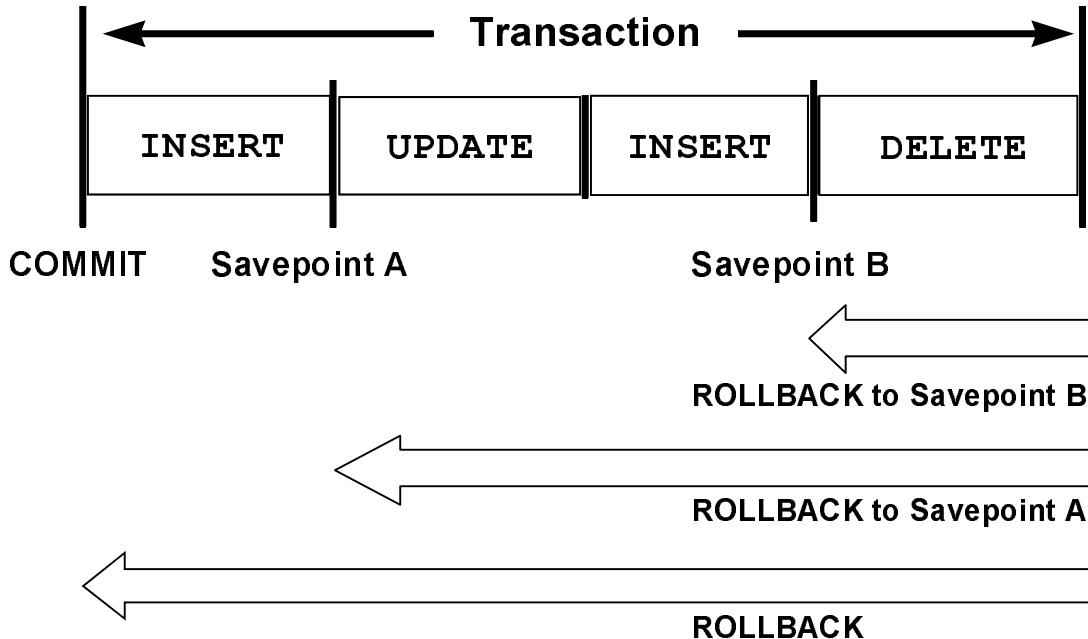
After one transaction ends, the next executable SQL statement automatically starts the next transaction.

A DDL statement or a DCL statement is automatically committed and therefore implicitly ends a transaction.

Advantages of COMMIT and ROLLBACK Statements

- Ensure data consistency**
- Preview data changes before making changes permanent**
- Group logically related operations**

Controlling Transactions



9-27

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Explicit Transaction Control Statements

You can control the logic of transactions by using the COMMIT, SAVEPOINT, and ROLLBACK statements.

Statement	Description
COMMIT	Ends the current transaction by making all pending data changes permanent
SAVEPOINT <i>name</i>	Marks a savepoint within the current transaction
ROLLBACK [TO SAVEPOINT <i>name</i>]	ROLLBACK ends the current transaction by discarding all pending data changes; ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT rolls back the current transaction to the specified savepoint, thereby discarding the savepoint and any subsequent changes. If you omit this clause, the ROLLBACK statement rolls back the entire transaction.

Note: SAVEPOINT is not ANSI standard SQL.

Instructor Note

Savepoints are not schema objects and cannot be referenced in the data dictionary.

Implicit Transaction Processing

- An automatic commit occurs under the following circumstances:
 - DDL statement is issued
 - DCL statement is issued
 - Normal exit from SQL*Plus, without explicitly issuing COMMIT or ROLLBACK
- An automatic rollback occurs under an abnormal termination of SQL*Plus or a system failure.

9-28

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Implicit Transaction Processing

Status	Circumstances
Automatic commit	DDL statement or DCL statement is issued Normal exit from SQL*Plus, without explicitly issuing COMMIT or ROLLBACK
Automatic rollback	Abnormal termination of SQL*Plus or system failure

Note: A third command is available in SQL*Plus. The AUTOCOMMIT command can be toggled ON or OFF. If set to ON, each individual DML statement is committed as soon as it is executed. You cannot roll back the changes. If set to OFF, COMMIT can be issued explicitly. Also, COMMIT is issued when a DDL statement is issued or when you exit from SQL*Plus.

System Failures

When a transaction is interrupted by a system failure, the entire transaction is automatically rolled back. This prevents the error from causing unwanted changes to the data and returns the tables to their state at the time of the last commit. In this way, the Oracle Server protects the integrity of the tables.

State of the Data Before COMMIT or ROLLBACK

- The previous state of the data can be recovered.
- The current user can review the results of the DML operations by using the SELECT statement.
- Other users *cannot* view the results of the DML statements by the current user.
- The affected rows are *locked*; other users cannot change the data within the affected rows.

9-29

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Committing Changes

Every data change made during the transaction is temporary until the transaction is committed.

State of the data before COMMIT or ROLLBACK is issued:

- Data manipulation operations primarily affect the database buffer; therefore, the previous state of the data can be recovered.
- The current user can review the results of the data manipulation operations by querying the tables.
- Other users cannot view the results of the data manipulation operations made by the current user. The Oracle Server institutes read consistency to ensure that each user sees data as it existed at the last commit.
- The affected rows are locked; other users cannot change the data in the affected rows.

Instructor Note

With the Oracle Server, data changes may actually be written to the database files before COMMIT, but they are still only temporary.

If a number of users are making changes simultaneously to the same table, then each user sees only his or her changes until other users commit their changes.

Other users see data as it is committed in the database (in other words, before changes).

By default, the Oracle Server has *row-level locking*. It is possible to alter the default locking mechanism.

State of the Data After COMMIT

- **Data changes are made permanent in the database.**
- **The previous state of the data is permanently lost.**
- **All users can view the results.**
- **Locks on the affected rows are released; those rows are available for other users to manipulate.**
- **All savepoints are erased.**

9-30

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Committing Changes (continued)

Make all pending changes permanent by using the COMMIT statement. Following a COMMIT:

State of the data after a COMMIT is issued:

- Data changes are written to the database.
- The previous state of the data is permanently lost.
- All users can view the results of the transaction.
- The locks on the affected rows are released; the rows are now available for other users to perform new data changes.
- All savepoints are erased.

Committing Data

- Make the changes.

```
SQL> UPDATE emp  
  2 SET deptno = 10  
  3 WHERE empno = 7782;  
1 row updated.
```

- Commit the changes.

```
SQL> COMMIT;  
Commit complete.
```

9-31

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Committing Changes (continued)

The slide example updates the EMP table and sets the department number for employee 7782 (Clark) to 10. It then makes the change permanent by issuing the COMMIT statement.

Example

Create a new ADVERTISING department with at least one employee. Make the data change permanent.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO department(deptno, dname, loc)  
  2 VALUES      (50, 'ADVERTISING', 'MIAMI');  
1 row created.  
  
SQL> UPDATE employee  
  2 SET deptno = 50  
  3 WHERE empno = 7876;  
1 row updated.  
  
SQL> COMMIT;  
Commit complete.
```

Instructor Note

Use this example to explain how COMMIT ensures that two related operations should occur together or not at all. In this case, COMMIT prevents empty departments from being created.

Instructor Note (for page 9-32)

Please run the script lab9_32.sql to create the test table and insert data into the table.

State of the Data After ROLLBACK

Discard all pending changes by using the ROLLBACK statement.

- **Data changes are undone.**
- **Previous state of the data is restored.**
- **Locks on the affected rows are released.**

```
SQL> DELETE FROM employee;
14 rows deleted.
SQL> ROLLBACK;
Rollback complete.
```

9-32

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Rolling Back Changes

Discard all pending changes by using the ROLLBACK statement. Following a ROLLBACK:

- Data changes are undone.
- The previous state of the data is restored.
- The locks on the affected rows are released.

Example

While attempting to remove a record from the TEST table, you can accidentally empty the table. You can correct the mistake, reissue the proper statement, and make the data change permanent.

```
SQL> DELETE FROM test;
25,000 rows deleted.
SQL> ROLLBACK;
Rollback complete.
SQL> DELETE FROM test
  2 WHERE          id = 100;
1 row deleted.
SQL> SELECT      *
  2 FROM        test
  3 WHERE        id = 100;
No rows selected.
SQL> COMMIT;
Commit complete.
```

Rolling Back Changes to a Marker

- **Create a marker in a current transaction by using the SAVEPOINT statement.**
- **Roll back to that marker by using the ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT statement.**

```
SQL> UPDATE...  
SQL> SAVEPOINT update_done;  
Savepoint created.  
SQL> INSERT...  
SQL> ROLLBACK TO update_done;  
Rollback complete.
```

9-33

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Rolling Back Changes to a Savepoint

You can create a marker in the current transaction by using the SAVEPOINT statement. The transaction therefore can be divided into smaller sections. You can then discard pending changes up to that marker by using the ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT statement.

If you create a second savepoint with the same name as an earlier savepoint, the earlier savepoint is deleted.

Instructor Note

Savepoints are especially useful in PL/SQL or a 3GL program in which recent changes can be undone conditionally based on runtime conditions.

Statement-Level Rollback

- **If a single DML statement fails during execution, only that statement is rolled back.**
- **The Oracle Server implements an implicit savepoint.**
- **All other changes are retained.**
- **The user should terminate transactions explicitly by executing a COMMIT or ROLLBACK statement.**

9-34

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Statement-Level Rollback

Part of a transaction can be discarded by an implicit rollback if a statement execution error is detected. If a single DML statement fails during execution of a transaction, its effect is undone by a statement-level rollback, but the changes made by the previous DML statements in the transaction will not be discarded. They can be committed or rolled back explicitly by the user.

Oracle issues an implicit COMMIT before and after any data definition language (DDL) statement. So, even if your DDL statement does not execute successfully, you cannot roll back the previous statement because the server issued a commit.

Terminate your transactions explicitly by executing a COMMIT or ROLLBACK statement.

Instructor Note

The Oracle Server implements locks on data to provide data concurrency in the database. Those locks are released when certain events occur (such as a system failure) or the transaction is completed. Implicit locks on the database are obtained when a DML statement is successfully executed. The Oracle Server by default locks data at the lowest level possible.

Manually acquire locks on the database tables by executing a LOCK TABLE statement or the SELECT statement with the FOR UPDATE clause.

Read Consistency

- **Read consistency guarantees a consistent view of the data at all times.**
- **Changes made by one user do not conflict with changes made by another user.**
- **Read consistency ensures that on the same data:**
 - **Readers do not wait for writers**
 - **Writers do not wait for readers**

9-35

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Read Consistency

Database users make two types of access to the database:

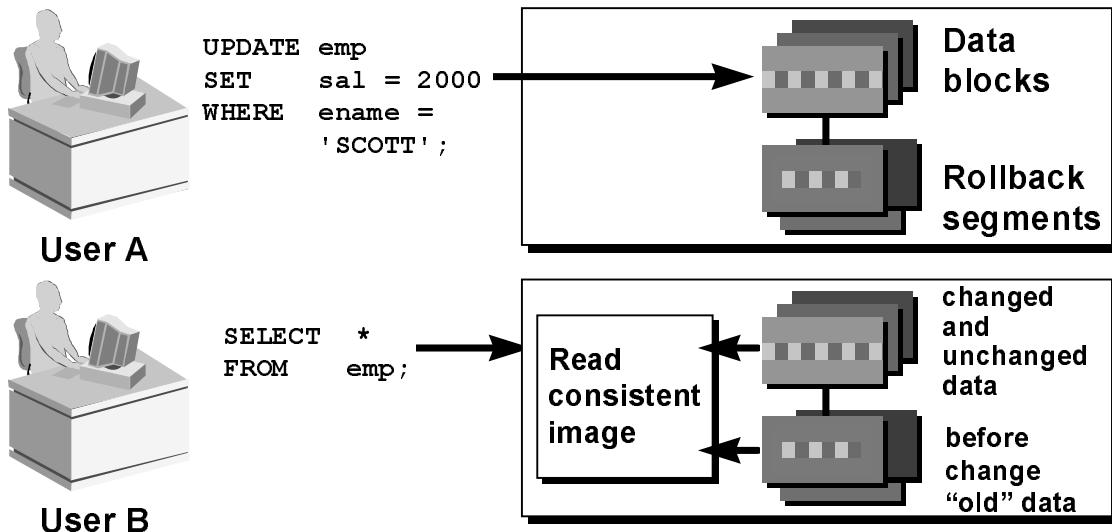
- Read operations (SELECT statement)
- Write operations (INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE statements)

You need read consistency so that the following occur:

- The database reader and writer are ensured a consistent view of the data.
- Readers do not view data that is in the process of being changed.
- Writers are ensured that the changes to the database are done in a consistent way.
- Changes made by one writer do not disrupt or conflict with changes another writer is making.

The purpose of read consistency is to ensure that each user sees data as it existed at the last commit, before a DML operation started.

Implementation of Read Consistency



9-36

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Implementation of Read Consistency

Read consistency is an automatic implementation. It keeps a partial copy of the database in rollback segments.

When an insert, update, or delete operation is made to the database, the Oracle Server takes a copy of the data before it is changed and writes it to a *rollback segment*.

All readers, except the one who issued the change, still see the database as it existed before the changes started; they view the rollback segments' "snapshot" of the data.

Before changes are committed to the database, only the user who is modifying the data sees the database with the alterations; everyone else sees the snapshot in the rollback segment. This guarantees that readers of the data read consistent data that is not currently undergoing change.

When a DML statement is committed, the change made to the database becomes visible to anyone executing a SELECT statement. The space occupied by the "old" data in the rollback segment file is freed for reuse.

If the transaction is rolled back, the changes are undone.

- The original, older version, of the data in the rollback segment is written back to the table.
- All users see the database as it existed before the transaction began.

Instructor Note

When you commit a transaction, the Oracle Server releases the rollback information but does not immediately destroy it. The information remains in the rollback segment to create read-consistent views of pertinent data for queries that started before the transaction committed.

Locking

Oracle locks:

- Prevent destructive interaction between concurrent transactions
- Require no user action
- Automatically use the lowest level of restrictiveness
- Are held for the duration of the transaction
- Have two basic modes:
 - Exclusive
 - Share

9-37

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

What Are Locks?

Locks are mechanisms that prevent destructive interaction between transactions accessing the same resource, either a user object (such as tables or rows) or system objects not visible to users (such as shared data structures and data dictionary rows).

How Oracle Locks Data

Locking in an Oracle database is fully automatic and requires no user action. Implicit locking occurs for all SQL statements except SELECT. The Oracle default locking mechanism automatically uses the lowest applicable level of restrictiveness, thus providing the highest degree of concurrency and maximum data integrity. Oracle also allows the user to lock data manually.

Locking Modes

Oracle uses two modes of locking in a multiuser database:

Lock Mode	Description
<i>exclusive</i>	Prevents a resource from being shared. The first transaction to lock a resource exclusively, is the only transaction that can alter the resource until the exclusive lock is released.
<i>share lock</i>	Allows the resource to be shared. Multiple users reading data can share the data, holding share locks to prevent concurrent access by a writer (who needs an exclusive lock). Several transactions can acquire share locks on the same resource.

Summary

Statement	Description
INSERT	Adds a new row to the table
UPDATE	Modifies existing rows in the table
DELETE	Removes existing rows from the table
COMMIT	Makes all pending changes permanent
SAVEPOINT	Allows a rollback to the savepoint marker
ROLLBACK	Discards all pending data changes

9-38

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Summary

Manipulate data in the Oracle database by using the INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements. Control data changes by using the COMMIT, SAVEPOINT, and ROLLBACK statements.

The Oracle Server guarantees a consistent view of data at all times.

Locking can be implicit or explicit.

Instructor Note (for page 9-37)

Please read the Instructor Note on page 9-43.

For more information on locking refer to *Oracle8i Concepts, Release 8.1.5*, “Data Concurrency and Consistency,” and to:

[http://st-](http://st-doc.us.oracle.com/8.0/815/server.815/a67781/c01intro.htm#4014)

[doc.us.oracle.com/8.0/815/server.815/a67781/c01intro.htm#4014](http://st-doc.us.oracle.com/8.0/815/server.815/a67781/c01intro.htm#4014)

Practice Overview

- **Inserting rows into the tables**
- **Updating and deleting rows in the table**
- **Controlling transactions**

9-39

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Practice Overview

In this practice, you will add rows to the MY_EMPLOYEE table, update and delete data from the table, and control your transactions.

Practice 9

Insert data into the MY_EMPLOYEE table.

1. Run the lab9_1.sql script to build the MY_EMPLOYEE table that will be used for the lab.
2. Describe the structure of the MY_EMPLOYEE table to identify the column names.

Name	Null?	Type
ID	NOT NULL	NUMBER (4)
LAST_NAME		VARCHAR2 (25)
FIRST_NAME		VARCHAR2 (25)
USERID		VARCHAR2 (8)
SALARY		NUMBER (9, 2)

3. Add the first row of data to the MY_EMPLOYEE table from the following sample data. Do not list the columns in the INSERT clause.

ID	LAST_NAME	FIRST_NAME	USERID	SALARY
1	Patel	Ralph	rpatel	795
2	Dancs	Betty	bdancs	860
3	Biri	Ben	bbiri	1100
4	Newman	Chad	cnewman	750
5	Ropeburn	Audry	aropebur	1550

4. Populate the MY_EMPLOYEE table with the second row of sample data from the preceding list. This time, list the columns explicitly in the INSERT clause.
5. Confirm your addition to the table.

ID	LAST_NAME	FIRST_NAME	USERID	SALARY
1	Patel	Ralph	rpatel	795
2	Dancs	Betty	bdancs	860

Practice 9 (continued)

6. Create a script named `loademp.sql` to load rows into the `MY_EMPLOYEE` table interactively. Prompt the user for the employee's id, first name, last name, and salary. Concatenate the first letter of the first name and the first seven characters of the last name to produce the userid.
7. Populate the table with the next two rows of sample data by running the script that you created.
8. Confirm your additions to the table.

ID	LAST_NAME	FIRST_NAME	USERID	SALARY
1	Patel	Ralph	rpatel	795
2	Dancs	Betty	bdancs	860
3	Biri	Ben	bbiri	1100
4	Newman	Chad	cnewman	750

9. Make the data additions permanent.

Update and delete data in the `MY_EMPLOYEE` table.

10. Change the last name of employee 3 to Drexler.
11. Change the salary to 1000 for all employees with a salary less than 900.
12. Verify your changes to the table.

LAST_NAME	SALARY
Patel	1000
Dancs	1000
Drexler	1100
Newman	1000

13. Delete Betty Dancs from the `MY_EMPLOYEE` table.

14. Confirm your changes to the table.

ID	LAST_NAME	FIRST_NAME	USERID	SALARY
1	Patel	Ralph	rpatel	1000
3	Drexler	Ben	bbiri	1100
4	Newman	Chad	cnewman	1000

Practice 9 (continued)

15. Commit all pending changes.

Control data transaction to the MY_EMPLOYEE table.

16. Populate the table with the last row of sample data by running the script that you created in step 6.

17. Confirm your addition to the table.

ID	LAST_NAME	FIRST_NAME	USERID	SALARY
1	Patel	Ralph	rpatel	1000
3	Drexler	Ben	bbiri	1100
4	Newman	Chad	cnewman	1000
5	Ropeburn	Audry	aropebur	1550

18. Mark an intermediate point in the processing of the transaction.

19. Empty the entire table.

20. Confirm that the table is empty.

21. Discard the most recent DELETE operation without discarding the earlier INSERT operation.

22. Confirm that the new row is still intact.

ID	LAST_NAME	FIRST_NAME	USERID	SALARY
1	Patel	Ralph	rpatel	1000
3	Drexler	Ben	bbiri	1100
4	Newman	Chad	cnewman	1000
5	Ropeburn	Audry	aropebur	1550

23. Make the data addition permanent.

Instructor Note (for page 9-37)

Demo: 19select.sql

Purpose: To illustrate the concept of reader does not lock reader.

Login to SQL*PLUS using the teach/oracle account.

Login to SQL*PLUS using the teach1/oracle account.

Run the 19select.sql script in the teach/oracle account. (This script selects all records from the dept table).

Run the 19select.sql script in the teach1/oracle account. (This script selects all records from the dept table).

In both the logins, the script executes successfully. This demonstrates the concept: *reader does not lock reader*.

Demo: 19grant.sql, 19update.sql, 19select.sql

Purpose: To illustrate the concept of writer does not lock reader.

Run the 19grant.sql script in the teach/oracle account. (This script grants SELECT and UPDATE privileges on the dept table to the teach1 account).

Run the 19update.sql script in the teach/oracle account. (This script updates the dept table, changing location of the dept 40 to LA. The update places a lock on the dept table).

Run the 19select.sql script in the teach/oracle account. (This script selects all records from the dept table. Observe that the location of deptno 40 is changed to LA).

Run the 19select.sql script in the teach1/oracle account. (This script selects all records from the dept table).

Observe that the script executes successfully in the teach1/oracle but the location for deptno 40 is still BOSTON. This demonstrates the concept: *writer does not lock reader*.

Demo: 19update.sql, 19rollback.sql, 19select.sql

Purpose: To illustrate the concept of writer locks writer.

Run the 19update.sql script in the teach1/oracle account. (The script does not execute because the dept table is locked by the teach/oracle account.)

Switch to the teach/oracle account and run the 19rollback.sql script. (This script rolls back the transaction, thereby releasing the lock on the dept table.)

Switch to the teach1/oracle account. You see that the 19update.sql script has executed successfully because the lock on the dept table has been released

Run the 19select.sql script in the teach1/oracle account. (This script selects all records from the dept table. Observe that the location of deptno 40 is changed to LA.)

This demonstrates the concept: *writer locks writer*.

10

Creating and Managing Tables

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	30 minutes	Lecture
	20 minutes	Practice
	50 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **Describe the main database objects**
- **Create tables**
- **Describe the datatypes that can be used when specifying column definition**
- **Alter table definitions**
- **Drop, rename, and truncate tables**

10-2

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Lesson Aim

In this lesson, you will learn about main database objects and their relationships to each other. You will also learn how to create, alter, and drop tables.

Instructor Note (for page 10-5)

A temporary table has a definition that persists like the definitions of regular tables, but it contains either session-specific or transaction-specific data. You specify whether the data is session- or transaction-specific with the ON COMMIT keywords. Temporary tables use temporary segments. Unlike permanent tables, temporary tables and their indexes do not automatically allocate a segment when they are created. Instead, segments are allocated when the first INSERT (or CREATE TABLE AS SELECT) is performed. This means that if a SELECT, UPDATE, or DELETE is performed before the first INSERT, then the table appears to be empty. You can perform DDL commands (ALTER TABLE, DROP TABLE, CREATE INDEX, and so on) on a temporary table only when no session is currently bound to it. A session gets bound to a temporary table when an INSERT is performed on it. The session gets unbound by a TRUNCATE, at session termination, or by doing a COMMIT or ABORT for a transaction-specific temporary table. Temporary segments are deallocated at the end of the transaction for transaction-specific temporary tables and at the end of the session for session-specific temporary tables.

For more information on temporary tables and CREATE TABLE refer to *Oracle8i Concepts, Release 8.1.5*, “Temporary Tables,” and to:

<http://st-doc.us.oracle.com/8.0/815/server.815/a67781/c08schem.htm#16100>

Database Objects

Object	Description
Table	Basic unit of storage; composed of rows and columns
View	Logically represents subsets of data from one or more tables
Sequence	Generates primary key values
Index	Improves the performance of some queries
Synonym	Gives alternative names to objects

10-3

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.



Database Objects

An Oracle database can contain multiple data structures. Each structure should be outlined in the database design so that it can be created during the build stage of database development.

- Table: Stores data
- View: Subset of data from one or more tables
- Sequence: Generates primary key values
- Index: Improves the performance of some queries
- Synonym: Gives alternative names to objects

Oracle8 Table Structures

- Tables can be created at any time, even while users are using the database.
- You do not need to specify the size of any table. The size is ultimately defined by the amount of space allocated to the database as a whole. It is important, however, to estimate how much space a table will use over time.
- Table structure can be modified online.

Note: More database objects are available but are not covered in this course.

Instructor Note

Tables can have up to 1,000 columns and must conform to standard database object-naming conventions. Column definitions can be omitted when using the AS subquery clause. Tables are created without data unless a query is specified. Rows are usually added by using INSERT statements.

Naming Conventions

- Must begin with a letter
- Can be 1–30 characters long
- Must contain only A–Z, a–z, 0–9, _, \$, and #
- Must not duplicate the name of another object owned by the same user
- Must not be an Oracle Server reserved word

10-4

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Naming Rules

Name database tables and columns according to the standard rules for naming any Oracle database object:

- Table names and column names must begin with a letter and can be 1–30 characters long.
- Names must contain only the characters A–Z, a–z, 0–9, _ (underscore), \$, and # (legal characters, but their use is discouraged).
- Names must not duplicate the name of another object owned by the same Oracle Server user.
- Names must not be an Oracle Server reserved word.

Naming Guidelines

- Use descriptive names for tables and other database objects.
- Name the same entity consistently in different tables. For example, the department number column is called DEPTNO in both the EMP table and the DEPT table.

Note: Names are case insensitive. For example, EMP is treated as the same name as eMP or eMp.

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “Object Names and Qualifiers.”

The CREATE TABLE Statement

- You must have :
 - CREATE TABLE privilege
 - A storage area

```
CREATE [GLOBAL TEMPORARY] TABLE [schema.]table
    (column datatype [DEFAULT expr] [, ...]);
```

- You specify:
 - Table name
 - Column name, column datatype, and column size

10-5

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The CREATE TABLE Statement

Create tables to store data by executing the SQL CREATE TABLE statement. This statement is one of the data definition language (DDL) statements, which are covered in subsequent lessons. DDL statements are a subset of SQL statements used to create, modify, or remove Oracle8 database structures. These statements have an immediate effect on the database, and they also record information in the data dictionary.

To create a table, a user must have the CREATE TABLE privilege and a storage area in which to create objects. The database administrator uses data control language (DCL) statements, which are covered in a later lesson, to grant privileges to users.

In the syntax:

GLOBAL TEMPORARY	specifies that the table is temporary and that its definition is visible to all sessions. The data in a temporary table is visible only to the session that inserts the data into the table.
<i>schema</i>	is the same as the owner's name
<i>table</i>	is the name of the table
DEFAULT <i>expr</i>	specifies a default value if a value is omitted in the INSERT statement
<i>column</i>	is the name of the column
<i>datatype</i>	is the column's datatype and length

Referencing Another User's Tables

- **Tables belonging to other users are not in the user's schema.**
- **You should use the owner's name as a prefix to the table.**

Referencing Another User's Tables

A *schema* is a collection of objects. Schema objects are the logical structures that directly refer to the data in a database. Schema objects include tables, views, synonyms, sequences, stored procedures, indexes, clusters, and database links.

If a table does not belong to the user, the owner's name must be prefixed to the table.

The DEFAULT Option

- Specify a default value for a column during an insert.

```
... hiredate DATE DEFAULT SYSDATE, ...
```

- Legal values are literal value, expression, or SQL function.
- Illegal values are another column's name or pseudocolumn.
- The default datatype must match the column datatype.

10-7

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The DEFAULT Option

A column can be given a default value by using the DEFAULT option. This option prevents null values from entering the columns if a row is inserted without a value for the column. The default value can be a literal, an expression, or a SQL function, such as SYSDATE and USER, but the value cannot be the name of another column or a pseudocolumn, such as NEXTVAL or CURRVAL. The default expression must match the datatype of the column.

Instructor Note

Here is an example for a pseudocolumn. For each row returned by a query, the ROWNUM pseudocolumn returns a number indicating the order in which Oracle server selects the row from a table or set of joined rows. The first row selected has a ROWNUM of 1, the second has 2, and so on.

Creating Tables

- Create the table.

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE dept  
2      (deptno  NUMBER(2),  
3       dname   VARCHAR2(14),  
4       loc     VARCHAR2(13));  
Table created.
```

- Confirm table creation.

```
SQL> DESCRIBE dept
```

Name	Null?	Type
DEPTNO		NUMBER(2)
DNAME		VARCHAR2(14)
LOC		VARCHAR2(13)

Creating Tables

The example on the slide creates the DEPT table, with three columns—namely, DEPTNO, DNAME, and LOC. It further confirms the creation of the table by issuing the DESCRIBE command.

Since creating a table is a DDL statement, an automatic commit takes place when this statement is executed.

Instructor Note

Explain that additional syntax for CREATE TABLE could include constraints and so on. For more information on the CREATE TABLE syntax, refer to:

Oracle8i SQL Reference, Release 8.1.5, “CREATE TABLE” and to:

<http://st-doc.us.oracle.com/8.0/815/server.815/a67779/ch4g.htm#9623>

Tables in the Oracle Database

- **User Tables**
 - Collection of tables created and maintained by the user
 - Contain user information
- **Data Dictionary**
 - Collection of tables created and maintained by the Oracle server
 - Contain database information

10-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Tables in the Oracle Database

User tables are tables created by the user, such as EMP. There is another collection of tables and views in the Oracle database known as the *data dictionary*. This collection is created and maintained by the Oracle Server and contains information about the database.

All data dictionary tables are owned by the SYS user. The base tables are rarely accessed by the user because the information in them is not easy to understand. Therefore, users typically access data dictionary views because the information is presented in a format that is easier to understand.

Information stored in the data dictionary include names of the Oracle Server users, privileges granted to users, database object names, table constraints, and auditing information.

There are four categories of data dictionary views; each category has a distinct prefix which reflects their intended use.

Prefix	Description
USER_	These views contain information about objects owned by the user
ALL_	These views contain information about all of the tables (object tables and relational tables) accessible to the user.
DBA_	These views are restricted views. These views can be accessed only by people who have been assigned the role DBA.
V\$ _	These views contain information about dynamic performance views, database server performance and locking.

Querying the Data Dictionary

- **Describe tables owned by the user.**

```
SQL> SELECT *  
2  FROM    user_tables;
```

- **View distinct object types owned by the user.**

```
SQL> SELECT DISTINCT object_type  
2  FROM    user_objects;
```

- **View tables, views, synonyms, and sequences owned by the user.**

```
SQL> SELECT *  
2  FROM    user_catalog;
```

10-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Querying the Data Dictionary

You can query the data dictionary tables to view various database objects owned by you. The data dictionary tables frequently used are these:

- USER_TABLES
- USER_OBJECTS
- USER_CATALOG

Note: USER_CATALOG has a synonym called CAT. You can use this synonym instead of USER_CATALOG in SQL statements.

```
SQL> SELECT *  
2  FROM    CAT;
```

Instructor Note (for page 10-11)

Explain the things to consider when declaring a column as LONG datatype:

- A LONG column is not copied when a table is created using a subquery.
- A LONG column cannot be included in a GROUP BY or an ORDER BY clause.
- Only one LONG column is allowed per table.
- No constraints can be defined on a LONG column.

Datatypes

Datatype	Description
VARCHAR2(size)	Variable-length character data
CHAR(size)	Fixed-length character data
NUMBER(p,s)	Variable-length numeric data
DATE	Date and time values
LONG	Variable-length character data up to 2 gigabytes
CLOB	Single-byte character data up to 4 gigabytes
RAW and LONG RAW	Raw binary data
BLOB	Binary data up to 4 gigabytes
BFILE	Binary data stored in an external file; up to 4 gigabytes

10-11

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.



Datatypes

Data type	Description
VARCHAR2(size)	Variable-length character data (A maximum <i>size</i> must be specified. Default and minimum <i>size</i> is 1; maximum <i>size</i> is 4000.)
CHAR(size)	Fixed-length character data of length <i>size</i> bytes (Default and minimum <i>size</i> is 1; maximum <i>size</i> is 2000.)
NUMBER(<i>p,s</i>)	Number having precision <i>p</i> and scale <i>s</i> (The precision is the total number of decimal digits, and the scale is the number of digits to the right of the decimal point. The precision can range from 1 to 38 and the scale can range from -84 to 127.)
DATE	Date and time values between January 1, 4712 B.C. and December 31, 9999 A.D.
LONG	Variable-length character data up to 2 gigabytes
CLOB	Single-byte character data up to 4 gigabytes

Instructor Note

Oracle8 introduces large object (LOB) datatypes that can store large and unstructured data such as text, image, video, and spatial data, up to 4 gigabytes in size.

Datatypes

Datatype	Description
VARCHAR2(<i>size</i>)	Variable-length character data
CHAR(<i>size</i>)	Fixed-length character data
NUMBER(<i>p,s</i>)	Variable-length numeric data
DATE	Date and time values
LONG	Variable-length character data up to 2 gigabytes
CLOB	Single-byte character data up to 4 gigabytes
RAW and LONG RAW	Raw binary data
BLOB	Binary data up to 4 gigabytes
BFILE	Binary data stored in an external file; up to 4 gigabytes

10-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Datatypes (continued)

Data type	Description
RAW(<i>size</i>)	Raw binary data of length <i>size</i> (A maximum size must be specified. Maximum <i>size</i> is 2000.)
LONG RAW	Raw binary data of variable length up to 2 gigabytes
BLOB	Binary data up to 4 gigabytes
BFILE	Binary data stored in an external file; up to 4 gigabytes

Creating a Table by Using a Subquery

- **Create a table and insert rows by combining the CREATE TABLE statement and AS *subquery* option.**

```
CREATE TABLE table
    [ (column, column... ) ]
AS subquery;
```

- **Match the number of specified columns to the number of subquery columns.**
- **Define columns with column names and default values.**

10-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating a Table from Rows in Another Table

A second method to create a table is to apply the AS *subquery* clause to both create the table and insert rows returned from the subquery.

In the syntax:

<i>table</i>	is the name of the table.
<i>column</i>	is the name of the column, default value, and integrity constraint.
<i>subquery</i>	is the SELECT statement that defines the set of rows to be inserted into the new table.

Guidelines

- The table will be created with the specified column names, and the rows retrieved by the SELECT statement will be inserted into the table.
- The column definition can contain only the column name and default value.
- If column specifications are given, the number of columns must equal the number of columns in the subquery SELECT list.
- If no column specifications are given, the column names of the table are the same as the column names in the subquery.

Creating a Table by Using a Subquery

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE dept30
  2 AS
  3   SELECT empno, ename, sal*12 ANNSAL, hiredate
  4   FROM emp
  5  WHERE deptno = 30;
Table created.
```

```
SQL> DESCRIBE dept30
```

Name	Null?	Type
EMPNO	NOT NULL	NUMBER(4)
ENAME		VARCHAR2(10)
ANNSAL		NUMBER
HIREDATE		DATE

10-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating a Table from Rows in Another Table (continued)

The slide example creates a table, DEPT30, that contains details of all the employees working in department 30. Notice that the data for the DEPT30 table is coming from the EMP table.

You can verify the existence of a database table and check column definitions by using the SQL*Plus DESCRIBE command.

Give a column alias when selecting an expression.

Instructor Note

To create a table with the same structure as an existing table, but without the data from the existing table, use a subquery with a WHERE clause, that will always evaluate as false. For example:

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE TEST AS
  2  (SELECT * FROM emp WHERE 1 = 2);
```

The ALTER TABLE Statement

Use the ALTER TABLE statement to:

- Add a new column
- Modify an existing column
- Define a default value for the new column

```
ALTER TABLE table
ADD          (column datatype [DEFAULT expr]
              [, column datatype]...);
```

```
ALTER TABLE table
MODIFY      (column datatype [DEFAULT expr]
              [, column datatype]...);
```

10-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

ALTER TABLE Statement

After you create your tables, you may need to change the table structures because you omitted a column or your column definition needs to be changed. You can do this by using the ALTER TABLE statement.

You can add columns to a table by using the ALTER TABLE statement with the ADD clause.

In the syntax:

<i>table</i>	is the name of the table
<i>column</i>	is the name of the new column
<i>datatype</i>	is the datatype and length of the new column
DEFAULT <i>expr</i>	specifies the default value for a new column

You can modify existing columns in a table by using the ALTER TABLE statement with the MODIFY clause.

Note: The slide gives the abridged syntax for ALTER TABLE. More about ALTER TABLE is covered in a subsequent lesson.

Adding a Column

DEPT30

EMPNO	ENAME	ANNSAL	HIREDATE	New column
7698	BLAKE	34200	01-MAY-81	
7654	MARTIN	15000	28-SEP-81	
7499	ALLEN	19200	20-FEB-81	
7844	TURNER	18000	08-SEP-81	
...				

“...add a
new
column
into
DEPT30
table...”

DEPT30

EMPNO	ENAME	ANNSAL	HIREDATE	JOB
7698	BLAKE	34200	01-MAY-81	
7654	MARTIN	15000	28-SEP-81	
7499	ALLEN	19200	20-FEB-81	
7844	TURNER	18000	08-SEP-81	
...				

Adding a Column

The graphic adds the JOB column to DEPT30 table. Notice that the new column becomes the last column in the table.

Adding a Column

- You use the ADD clause to add columns.

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE dept30
  2 ADD          (job VARCHAR2(9));
Table altered.
```

- The new column becomes the last column.

EMPNO	ENAME	ANNSAL	HIREDATE	JOB
7698	BLAKE	34200	01-MAY-81	
7654	MARTIN	15000	28-SEP-81	
7499	ALLEN	19200	20-FEB-81	
7844	TURNER	18000	08-SEP-81	
...				
6 rows selected.				

10-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Guidelines for Adding a Column

- You can add or modify columns, but you cannot drop them from a table.
- You cannot specify where the column is to appear. The new column becomes the last column.

The example on the slide adds a column named JOB to the DEPT30 table. The JOB column becomes the last column in the table.

Note: If a table already contains rows when a column is added, then the new column is initially null for all the rows.

Instructor Note

Oracle8i provides new options for the ALTER TABLE command, including the ability to drop a column from a table which are covered later in this lesson.

Modifying a Column

- You can change a column's datatype, size, and default value.

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE      dept30
  2  MODIFY          (ename VARCHAR2(15));
Table altered.
```

- A change to the default value affects only subsequent insertions to the table.

10-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Modifying a Column

You can modify a column definition by using the ALTER TABLE statement with the MODIFY clause. Column modification can include changes to a column's datatype, size, and default value.

Guidelines

- Increase the width or precision of a numeric column.
- Decrease the width of a column if the column contains only null values and if the table has no rows.
- Change the datatype if the column contains null values.
- Convert a CHAR column to the VARCHAR2 datatype or convert a VARCHAR2 column to the CHAR datatype if the column contains null values or if you do not change the size.
- A change to the default value of a column affects only subsequent insertions to the table.

Dropping a Column

You use the **DROP COLUMN** clause drop columns you no longer need from the table.

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE      dept30
      2  DROP  COLUMN    job ;
Table altered.
```

10-19

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Dropping a Column

You can drop a column from a table by using the **ALTER TABLE** statement with the **DROP COLUMN** clause. This is a feature available from Oracle8*i* onward.

Guidelines

- The column may or may not contain data.
- Only one column can be dropped at a time.
- The table must have at least one column remaining in it after it is altered.
- Once a column is dropped, it cannot be recovered.

SET UNUSED Option

- You use the SET UNUSED option to mark one or more columns as unused.
- You use the DROP UNUSED COLUMNS option to remove the columns that are marked as UNUSED.

```
ALTER TABLE table
SET UNUSED (column);
OR
ALTER TABLE table
SET UNUSED COLUMN column;
```

```
ALTER TABLE table
DROP UNUSED COLUMNS;
```

10-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

SET UNUSED Option

The SET UNUSED option marks one or more columns as unused so that they can be dropped when the demand on system resources is less. This is a feature available in Oracle8i. Specifying this clause does not actually remove the target columns from each row in the table (that is, it does not restore the disk space used by these columns). Therefore, the response time is faster than it would be if you executed the DROP clause. Unused columns are treated as if they were dropped, even though their column data remains in the table's rows. After a column has been marked as unused, you have no access to that column. A "SELECT *" query will not retrieve data from unused columns. In addition, the names and types of columns marked unused will not be displayed during a DESCRIBE, and you can add to the table a new column with the same name as an unused column.

DROP UNUSED COLUMNS Option

DROP UNUSED COLUMNS removes from the table all columns currently marked as unused. You can use this statement when you want to reclaim the extra disk space from unused columns in the table. If the table contains no unused columns, the statement returns with no errors.

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE dept30
  2  SET UNUSED (ename);
Table altered.

SQL> ALTER TABLE dept30
  2  DROP UNUSED COLUMNS;
Table altered.
```

Dropping a Table

- All data and structure in the table is deleted.
- Any pending transactions are committed.
- All indexes are dropped.
- You **cannot** roll back this statement.

```
SQL> DROP TABLE dept30;
Table dropped.
```

10-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Dropping a Table

The `DROP TABLE` statement removes the definition of an Oracle8 table. When you drop a table, the database loses all the data in the table and all the indexes associated with it.

Syntax

```
DROP TABLE table;
```

where: *table* is the name of the table

Guidelines

- All data is deleted from the table.
- Any views and synonyms will remain but are invalid.
- Any pending transactions are committed.
- Only the creator of the table or a user with the `DROP ANY TABLE` privilege can remove a table.

The `DROP TABLE` statement, once executed, is irreversible. The Oracle Server does not question the action when you issue the `DROP TABLE` statement. If you own that table or have a high-level privilege, then the table is immediately removed. All DDL statements issue a commit, therefore making the transaction permanent.

Changing the Name of an Object

- To change the name of a table, view, sequence, or synonym, you execute the RENAME statement.

```
SQL> RENAME dept TO department;
Table renamed.
```

- You must be the owner of the object.

10-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Renaming a Table

Additional DDL statements include the RENAME statement, which is used to rename a table, view, sequence, or a synonym.

Syntax

```
RENAME      old_name    TO    new_name;
where:   old_name          is the old name of the table, view, sequence, or synonym
        new_name          is the new name of the table, view, sequence, or synonym
```

You must be the owner of the object that you rename.

Truncating a Table

- The TRUNCATE TABLE statement:
 - Removes all rows from a table
 - Releases the storage space used by that table

```
SQL> TRUNCATE TABLE department;
Table truncated.
```

- You cannot roll back row removal when using TRUNCATE.
- Alternatively, you can remove rows by using the DELETE statement.

10-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Truncating a Table

Another DDL statement is the TRUNCATE TABLE statement, which is used to remove all rows from a table and to release the storage space used by that table. When using the TRUNCATE TABLE statement, you cannot rollback row removal.

Syntax

```
TRUNCATE TABLE table;
```

where: *table* is the name of the table

You must be the owner of the table or have DELETE TABLE system privileges to truncate a table.

The DELETE statement can also remove all rows from a table, but it does not release storage space.

Adding Comments to a Table

- You can add comments to a table or column by using the **COMMENT** statement.

```
SQL> COMMENT ON TABLE emp
  2 IS 'Employee Information';
Comment created.
```

- Comments can be viewed through the data dictionary views.
 - **ALL_COL_COMMENTS**
 - **USER_COL_COMMENTS**
 - **ALL_TAB_COMMENTS**
 - **USER_TAB_COMMENTS**

10-24

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Adding a Comment to a Table

You can add a comment of up to 2,000 bytes about a column, table, view, or snapshot by using the **COMMENT** statement. The comment is stored in the data dictionary and can be viewed in one of the following data dictionary views in the **COMMENTS** column:

- **ALL_COL_COMMENTS**
- **USER_COL_COMMENTS**
- **ALL_TAB_COMMENTS**
- **USER_TAB_COMMENTS**

Syntax

```
COMMENT ON TABLE table | COLUMN table.column
  IS 'text';
```

where: *table* is the name of the table
column is the name of the column in a table
text is the text of the comment

You can drop a comment from the database by setting it to empty string ('').

```
SQL> COMMENT ON TABLE emp IS '';
```

Summary

Statement	Description
CREATE TABLE	Creates a table
ALTER TABLE	Modifies table structures
DROP TABLE	Removes the rows and table structure
RENAME	Changes the name of a table, view, sequence, or synonym
TRUNCATE	Removes all rows from a table and releases the storage space
COMMENT	Adds comments to a table or view

10-25

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

CREATE TABLE

- Create a table.
- Create a table based on another table by using a subquery.

ALTER TABLE

- Modify table structures.
- Change column widths, change column datatypes, and add columns.

DROP TABLE

- Remove rows and a table structure.
- Once executed, this statement cannot be rolled back.

RENAME

- Rename a table, view, sequence, or synonym.

TRUNCATE

- Remove all rows from a table and release the storage space used by the table.
- The DELETE statement removes only rows.

COMMENT

- Add a comment to a table or a column.
- Query the data dictionary to view the comment.

Practice Overview

- **Creating new tables**
- **Creating a new table by using the CREATE TABLE AS syntax**
- **Modifying column definitions**
- **Verifying that the tables exist**
- **Adding comments to tables**
- **Dropping tables**
- **Altering tables**

10-26

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Practice Overview

Create new tables by using the CREATE TABLE statement. Confirm that the new table was added to the database. Create the syntax in the command file, and then execute the command file to create the table.

Instructor Note

Explain what a table instance chart is. Tell students, how to interpret a table instance chart. Explain that they need to look out for the entries in the Column Name, Datatype, and Length fields. The other entries are optional, and if these entries exist, they are constraints that need to be incorporated as a part of the table definition.

Point out to students that the practices are based on the tables that they are creating exclusively for this lesson. They need to be careful not to alter the other tables in the schema.

Practice 10

- Create the DEPARTMENT table based on the following table instance chart. Enter the syntax in a script called p10q1.sql, then execute the script to create the table. Confirm that the table is created.

Column Name	Id	Name
Key Type		
Nulls/Unique		
FK Table		
FK Column		
Datatype	Number	Varchar2
Length	7	25

Name	Null?	Type
ID		NUMBER (7)
NAME		VARCHAR2 (25)

- Populate the DEPARTMENT table with data from the DEPT table. Include only columns that you need.
- Create the EMPLOYEE table based on the following table instance chart. Enter the syntax in a script called p10q3.sql, and then execute the script to create the table. Confirm that the table is created.

Column Name	ID	LAST_NAME	FIRST_NAME	DEPT_ID
Key Type				
Nulls/Unique				
FK Table				
FK Column				
Datatype	Number	Varchar2	Varchar2	Number
Length	7	25	25	7

Name	Null?	Type
ID		NUMBER (7)
LAST_NAME		VARCHAR2 (25)
FIRST_NAME		VARCHAR2 (25)
DEPT_ID		NUMBER (7)

Practice 10 (continued)

4. Modify the EMPLOYEE table to allow for longer employee last names. Confirm your modification.

Name	Null?	Type
ID		NUMBER (7)
LAST_NAME		VARCHAR2 (50)
FIRST_NAME		VARCHAR2 (25)
DEPT_ID		NUMBER (7)

5. Confirm that both the DEPARTMENT and EMPLOYEE tables are stored in the data dictionary. (*Hint:* USER_TABLES)

TABLE_NAME
DEPARTMENT
EMPLOYEE

6. Create the EMPLOYEE2 table based on the structure of the EMP table. Include only the EMPNO, ENAME, and DEPTNO columns. Name the columns in your new table ID, LAST_NAME, and DEPT_ID, respectively.
7. Drop the EMPLOYEE table.
8. Rename the EMPLOYEE2 table to EMPLOYEE.
9. Add a comment to the DEPARTMENT and EMPLOYEE table definitions describing the tables. Confirm your additions in the data dictionary.
10. Drop the LAST_NAME column from the EMPLOYEE table. Confirm your modification by checking the description of the table.
11. Create the EMPLOYEE2 table based on the structure of the EMP table. Include only the EMPNO, ENAME, and DEPTNO columns. Name the columns in your new table ID, LAST_NAME, and DEPT_ID, respectively. Mark the DEPT_ID column in the EMPLOYEE2 table as UNUSED. Confirm your modification by checking the description of the table.
12. Drop all the UNUSED columns from the EMPLOYEE2 table. Confirm your modification by checking the description of the table.

11

Including Constraints

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	45 minutes	Lecture
	25 minutes	Practice
	70 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- Describe constraints**
- Create and maintain constraints**

11-2

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Lesson Aim

In this lesson, you will learn how to implement business rules by including integrity constraints.

What Are Constraints?

- **Constraints enforce rules at the table level.**
- **Constraints prevent the deletion of a table if there are dependencies.**
- **The following constraint types are valid in Oracle:**
 - NOT NULL
 - UNIQUE
 - PRIMARY KEY
 - FOREIGN KEY
 - CHECK

11-3

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Constraints

The Oracle Server uses *constraints* to prevent invalid data entry into tables.

You can use constraints to do the following:

- Enforce rules at the table level whenever a row is inserted, updated, or deleted from that table. The constraint must be satisfied for the operation to succeed.
- Prevent the deletion of a table if there are dependencies from other tables.
- Provide rules for Oracle tools, such as Oracle Developer.

Data Integrity Constraints

Constraint	Description
NOT NULL	Specifies that this column may not contain a null value
UNIQUE	Specifies a column or combination of columns whose values must be unique for all rows in the table
PRIMARY KEY	Uniquely identifies each row of the table
FOREIGN KEY	Establishes and enforces a foreign key relationship between the column and a column of the referenced table
CHECK	Specifies a condition that must be true

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “CONSTRAINT Clause.”

Constraint Guidelines

- **Name a constraint or the Oracle Server will generate a name by using the `SYS_Cn` format.**
- **Create a constraint:**
 - At the same time as the table is created
 - After the table has been created
- **Define a constraint at the column or table level.**
- **View a constraint in the data dictionary.**

11-4

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Constraint Guidelines

All constraints are stored in the data dictionary. Constraints are easy to reference if you give them a meaningful name. Constraint names must follow the standard object-naming rules. If you do not name your constraint, Oracle generates a name with the format `SYS_Cn`, where n is an integer to create a unique constraint name.

Constraints can be defined at the time of table creation or after the table has been created.

You can view the constraints defined for a specific table by looking at the `USER_CONSTRAINTS` data dictionary table.

Defining Constraints

```
CREATE TABLE [schema.]table  
  (column datatype [DEFAULT expr]  
   [column_constraint],  
   ...  
   [table_constraint] [, . . .]);
```

```
CREATE TABLE emp (  
    empno  NUMBER(4),  
    ename  VARCHAR2(10),  
    ...  
    deptno NUMBER(2) NOT NULL,  
    CONSTRAINT emp_empno_pk  
        PRIMARY KEY (EMPNO));
```

Defining Constraints

The slide gives the syntax for defining constraints while creating a table.

In the syntax:

- schema* is the same as the owner's name
- table* is the name of the table
- DEFAULT expr* specifies a default value if a value is omitted in the INSERT statement
- column* is the name of the column
- datatype* is the column's datatype and length
- column_constraint* is an integrity constraint as part of the column definition
- table_constraint* is an integrity constraint as part of the table definition

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, "CREATE TABLE."

Defining Constraints

- **Column constraint level**

```
column [CONSTRAINT constraint_name] constraint_type,
```

- **Table constraint level**

```
column, ...
[CONSTRAINT constraint_name] constraint_type
(column, ...),
```

Defining Constraints (continued)

Constraints are usually created at the same time as the table. Constraints can be added to a table after its creation and also temporarily disabled.

Constraints can be defined at one of two levels.

Constraint Level	Description
Column	References a single column and is defined within a specification for the owning column; can define any type of integrity constraint
Table	References one or more columns and is defined separately from the definitions of the columns in the table; can define any constraints except NOT NULL

In the syntax:

constraint_name is the name of the constraint
constraint_type is the type of the constraint

Instructor Note

Explain that the column level and the table level refer to location in the syntax.

The NOT NULL Constraint

Ensures that null values are not permitted for the column

EMP

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	...	COMM	DEPTNO
7839	KING	PRESIDENT			10
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER			30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER			10
7566	JONES	MANAGER			20
...					

NOT NULL constraint
(no row can contain
a null value for
this column)

Absence of NOT NULL
constraint
(any row can contain
null for this column)

ORACLE®

The NOT NULL Constraint

The NOT NULL constraint ensures that null values are not allowed in the column. Columns without the NOT NULL constraint can contain null values by default.

The NOT NULL Constraint

Defined at the column level

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE emp (
  2      empno      NUMBER(4),
  3      ename      VARCHAR2(10) NOT NULL,
  4      job        VARCHAR2(9),
  5      mgr        NUMBER(4),
  6      hiredate   DATE,
  7      sal         NUMBER(7,2),
  8      comm        NUMBER(7,2),
  9      deptno     NUMBER(7,2) NOT NULL);
```

11-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The NOT NULL Constraint (continued)

The NOT NULL constraint can be specified only at the column level, not at the table level.

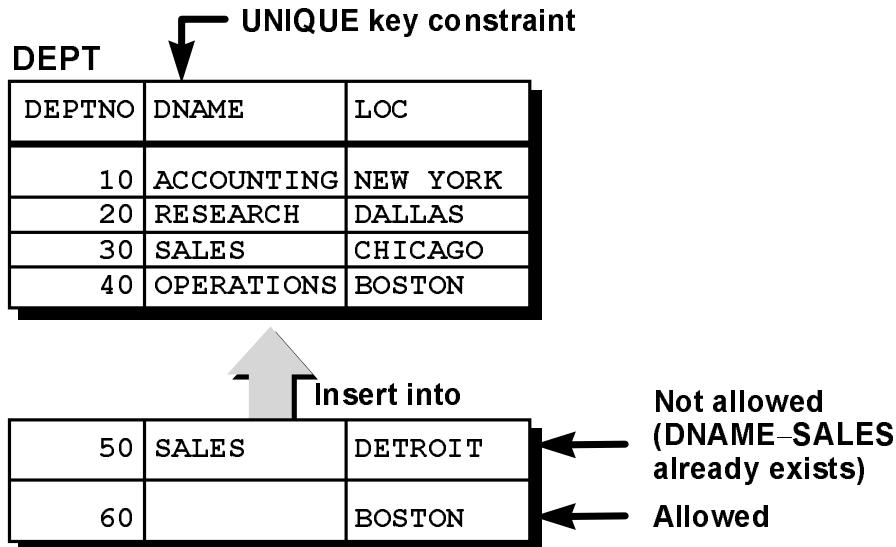
The slide example applies the NOT NULL constraint to the ENAME and DEPTNO columns of the EMP table. Because these constraints are unnamed, the Oracle Server will create names for them.

You can specify the name of the constraint while specifying the constraint.

```
... deptno NUMBER(7,2)
      CONSTRAINT emp_deptno_nn NOT NULL...
```

Note: All the constraint examples described in this lesson may not be present in the sample tables provided with the course. If desired, these constraints can be added to the tables.

The UNIQUE KEY Constraint



11-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The UNIQUE Key Constraint

A UNIQUE key integrity constraint requires that every value in a column or set of columns (key) be unique—that is, no two rows of a table have duplicate values in a specified column or set of columns. The column (or set of columns) included in the definition of the UNIQUE key constraint is called the *unique key*. If the UNIQUE key comprises more than one column, that group of columns is said to be a *composite unique key*.

UNIQUE key constraints allow the input of nulls unless you also define NOT NULL constraints for the same columns. In fact, any number of rows can include nulls for columns without NOT NULL constraints because nulls are not considered equal to anything. A null in a column (or in all columns of a composite UNIQUE key) always satisfies a UNIQUE key constraint.

Note: Because of the search mechanism for UNIQUE constraints on more than one column, you cannot have identical values in the non-null columns of a partially null composite UNIQUE key constraint.

Instructor Note

Explain to students that since SALES department already exists, the first entry is not allowed. In the second entry, the department name is null; this entry is allowed.

The UNIQUE KEY Constraint

Defined at either the table level or the column level

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE dept(
  2      deptno      NUMBER(2),
  3      dname       VARCHAR2(14),
  4      loc         VARCHAR2(13),
  5      CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uk UNIQUE(dname));
```

11-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

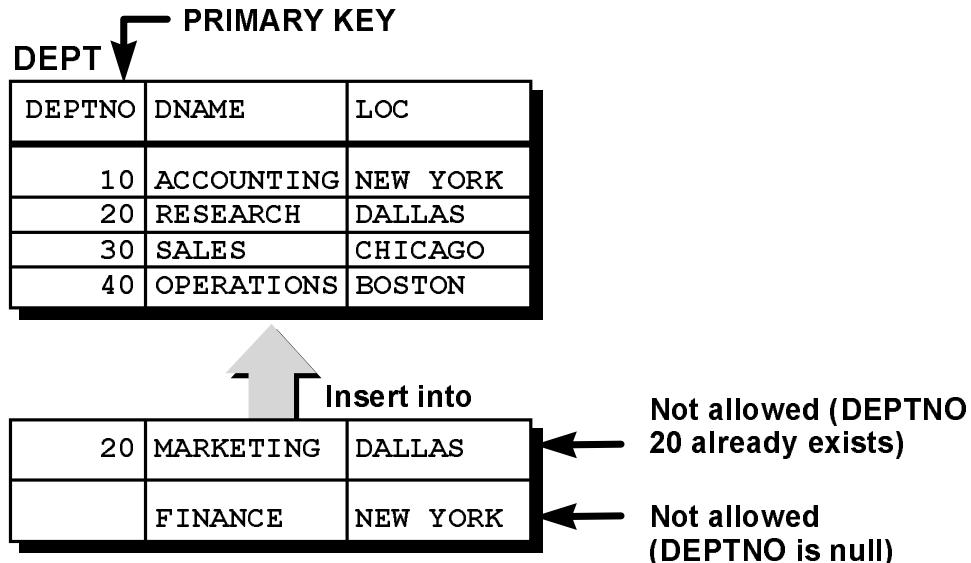
The UNIQUE Key Constraint (continued)

UNIQUE key constraints can be defined at the column or table level. A composite unique key is created by using the table level definition.

The example on the slide applies UNIQUE key constraint to the DNAME column of the DEPT table. The name of the constraint is DEPT_DNAME_UK.

Note: The Oracle Server enforces the UNIQUE key constraint by implicitly creating a unique index on the unique key.

The PRIMARY KEY Constraint



The PRIMARY KEY Constraint

A PRIMARY KEY constraint creates a primary key for the table. Only one primary key can be created for each table. The PRIMARY KEY constraint is a column or set of columns that uniquely identifies each row in a table. This constraint enforces uniqueness of the column or column combination and ensures that no column that is part of the primary key can contain a null value.

The PRIMARY KEY Constraint

Defined at either the table level or the column level

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE dept(
  2      deptno    NUMBER(2),
  3      dname     VARCHAR2(14),
  4      loc       VARCHAR2(13),
  5      CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uk UNIQUE (dname),
  6      CONSTRAINT dept_deptno_pk PRIMARY KEY(deptno));
```

11-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The PRIMARY KEY Constraint (continued)

PRIMARY KEY constraints can be defined at the column level or table level. A composite PRIMARY KEY is created by using the table level definition.

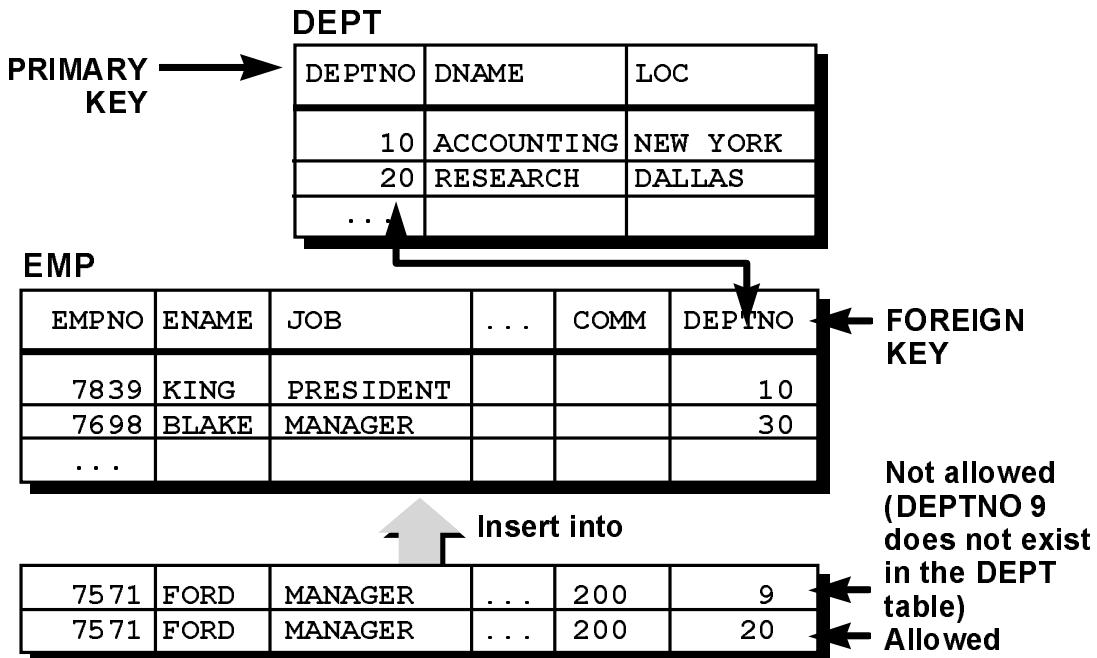
The example on the slide defines a PRIMARY KEY constraint on the DEPTNO column of the DEPT table. The name of the constraint is DEPT_DEPTNO_PK.

Note: A UNIQUE index is automatically created for a PRIMARY KEY column.

Instructor Note

Explain to students that a table can have only one PRIMARY KEY constraint but can have several UNIQUE constraints.

The FOREIGN KEY Constraint



11-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The FOREIGN KEY Constraint

The FOREIGN KEY, or referential integrity constraint, designates a column or combination of columns as a foreign key and establishes a relationship between a primary key or a unique key in the same table or a different table. In the example on the slide, DEPTNO has been defined as the foreign key in the EMP table (dependent or child table); it references the DEPTNO column of the DEPT table (referenced or parent table).

A foreign key value must match an existing value in the parent table or be NULL.

Foreign keys are based on data values and are purely logical, not physical, pointers.

Instructor Note

Explain to students that you cannot create a foreign key without existing primary key values.

The FOREIGN KEY Constraint

Defined at either the table level or the column level

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE emp(
  2      empno      NUMBER(4),
  3      ename      VARCHAR2(10) NOT NULL,
  4      job        VARCHAR2(9),
  5      mgr        NUMBER(4),
  6      hiredate   DATE,
  7      sal         NUMBER(7,2),
  8      comm        NUMBER(7,2),
  9      deptno     NUMBER(7,2) NOT NULL,
 10      CONSTRAINT emp_deptno_fk FOREIGN KEY (deptno)
 11                      REFERENCES dept (deptno));
```

11-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The FOREIGN KEY Constraint (continued)

FOREIGN KEY constraints can be defined at the column or table constraint level. A composite foreign key must be created by using the table-level definition.

The example on the slide defines a FOREIGN KEY constraint on the DEPTNO column of the EMP table, using table level syntax. The name of the constraint is EMP_DEPTNO_FK.

The foreign key can also be defined at the column level, provided the constraint is based on a single column. The syntax differs in that the keywords FOREIGN KEY do not appear. For example:

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE emp
  ...
  deptno NUMBER(2) CONSTRAINT emp_deptno_fk REFERENCES
                    dept(deptno),
  ...
);
```

FOREIGN KEY Constraint Keywords

- **FOREIGN KEY:** Defines the column in the child table at the table constraint level
- **REFERENCES:** Identifies the table and column in the parent table
- **ON DELETE CASCADE:** Allows deletion in the parent table and deletion of the dependent rows in the child table

11-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The FOREIGN KEY Constraint (continued)

The foreign key is defined in the child table, and the table containing the referenced column is the parent table. The foreign key is defined using a combination of the following keywords:

- FOREIGN KEY is used to define the column in the child table at the table constraint level.
- REFERENCES identifies the table and column in the parent table.
- ON DELETE CASCADE indicates that when the row in the parent table is deleted, the dependent rows in the child table will also be deleted.

Without the ON DELETE CASCADE option, the row in the parent table cannot be deleted if it is referenced in the child table.

The CHECK Constraint

- **Defines a condition that each row must satisfy**
- **Expressions that are not allowed:**
 - References to CURRVAL, NEXTVAL, LEVEL, and ROWNUM pseudocolumns
 - Calls to SYSDATE, UID, USER, and USERENV functions
 - Queries that refer to other values in other rows

```
..., deptno NUMBER(2),
  CONSTRAINT emp_deptno_ck
    CHECK (DEPTNO BETWEEN 10 AND 99),...
```

11-16

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

The CHECK Constraint

The CHECK constraint defines a condition that each row must satisfy. The condition can use the same constructs as query conditions, with the following exceptions:

- References to the CURRVAL, NEXTVAL, LEVEL, and ROWNUM pseudocolumns
- Calls to SYSDATE, UID, USER, and USERENV functions
- Queries that refer to other values in other rows

A single column can have multiple CHECK constraints that reference the column in its definition. There is no limit to the number of CHECK constraints that you can define on a column.

CHECK constraints can be defined at the column level or table level.

Instructor Note

You can defer checking constraints for validity until the end of the transaction.

- A constraint is *deferred* if the system checks that it is satisfied only on commit. If a deferred constraint is violated, then commit causes the transaction to roll back.
- A constraint is *immediate* if it is checked at the end of each statement. If it is violated, the statement is rolled back immediately.

Adding a Constraint

```
ALTER TABLE table
ADD [CONSTRAINT constraint] type (column);
```

- Add or drop, but not modify, a constraint
- Enable or disable constraints
- Add a NOT NULL constraint by using the MODIFY clause

11-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Adding a Constraint

You can add a constraint for existing tables by using the ALTER TABLE statement with the ADD clause.

In the syntax:

<i>table</i>	is the name of the table
<i>constraint</i>	is the name of the constraint
<i>type</i>	is the constraint type
<i>column</i>	is the name of the column affected by the constraint

The constraint name syntax is optional, although recommended. If you do not name your constraints, the system will generate constraint names.

Guidelines

- You can add, drop, enable, or disable a constraint, but you cannot modify its structure.
- You can add a NOT NULL constraint to an existing column by using the MODIFY clause of the ALTER TABLE statement.

Note: You can define a NOT NULL column only if the table contains no rows, because data cannot be specified for existing rows at the same time that the column is added.

Adding a Constraint

Add a FOREIGN KEY constraint to the EMP table indicating that a manager must already exist as a valid employee in the EMP table.

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE      emp
  2  ADD CONSTRAINT  emp_mgr_fk
  3          FOREIGN KEY(mgr) REFERENCES emp(empno) ;
Table altered.
```

11-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Adding a Constraint (continued)

The example on the slide creates a FOREIGN KEY constraint on the EMP table. The constraint ensures that a manager exists as a valid employee in the EMP table.

Dropping a Constraint

- Remove the manager constraint from the EMP table.

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE      emp
  2  DROP CONSTRAINT  emp_mgr_fk;
Table altered.
```

- Remove the PRIMARY KEY constraint on the DEPT table and drop the associated FOREIGN KEY constraint on the EMP.DEPTNO column.

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE      dept
  2  DROP PRIMARY KEY CASCADE;
Table altered.
```

11-19

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Dropping a Constraint

To drop a constraint, you can identify the constraint name from the USER_CONSTRAINTS and USER_CONS_COLUMNS data dictionary views. Then use the ALTER TABLE statement with the DROP clause. The CASCADE option of the DROP clause causes any dependent constraints also to be dropped.

Syntax

```
ALTER TABLE table
DROP  PRIMARY KEY | UNIQUE (column) |
CONSTRAINT   constraint [CASCADE];
```

where: *table* is the name of the table
 column is the name of the column affected by the constraint
 constraint is the name of the constraint

When you drop an integrity constraint, that constraint is no longer enforced by the Oracle Server and is no longer available in the data dictionary.

Disabling Constraints

- Execute the DISABLE clause of the ALTER TABLE statement to deactivate an integrity constraint.
- Apply the CASCADE option to disable dependent integrity constraints.

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE emp  
  2  DISABLE CONSTRAINT emp_empno_pk CASCADE;  
Table altered.
```

11-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Disabling a Constraint

You can disable a constraint without dropping it or re-creating it by using the ALTER TABLE statement with the DISABLE clause.

Syntax

```
ALTER TABLE table  
  DISABLE CONSTRAINT constraint [CASCADE];
```

where: *table* is the name of the table
 constraint is the name of the constraint

Guidelines

- You can use the DISABLE clause in both the CREATE TABLE statement and the ALTER TABLE statement.
- The CASCADE clause disables dependent integrity constraints.

Enabling Constraints

- Activate an integrity constraint currently disabled in the table definition by using the **ENABLE** clause.

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE          emp
      2  ENABLE CONSTRAINT   emp_empno_pk;
Table altered.
```

- A **UNIQUE** or **PRIMARY KEY** index is automatically created if you enable a **UNIQUE** key or **PRIMARY KEY** constraint.

11-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Enabling a Constraint

You can enable a constraint without dropping it or re-creating it by using the **ALTER TABLE** statement with the **ENABLE** clause.

Syntax

```
ALTER TABLE table
ENABLE CONSTRAINT constraint;
```

where: *table* is the name of the table
 constraint is the name of the constraint

Guidelines

- If you enable a constraint, that constraint applies to all the data in the table. All the data in the table must fit the constraint.
- If you enable a **UNIQUE** key or **PRIMARY KEY** constraint, a **UNIQUE** or **PRIMARY KEY** index is automatically created.
- You can use the **ENABLE** clause in both the **CREATE TABLE** statement and the **ALTER TABLE** statement.

Instructor Note

Please read Instructor Note on page 11-29 for information on the **VALIDATE** and **NOVALIDATE** options

Cascading Constraints

- The CASCADE CONSTRAINTS clause is used along with the DROP COLUMN clause.
- The CASCADE CONSTRAINTS clause drops all referential integrity constraints that refer to the primary and unique keys defined on the dropped columns.

11-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Cascading CONSTRAINTS

This statement illustrates the usage of the CASCADE CONSTRAINTS clause. Assume table test1 is created as follows:

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE test1 (
  2   pk NUMBER PRIMARY KEY,
  3   fk NUMBER,
  4   col1 NUMBER,
  5   col2 NUMBER,
  6   CONSTRAINT fk_constraint FOREIGN KEY (fk) REFERENCES test1,
  7   CONSTRAINT ck1 CHECK (pk > 0 and col1 > 0),
  8   CONSTRAINT ck2 CHECK (col2 > 0));
```

An error will be returned for the following statements:

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE test1 DROP (pk); -- pk is a parent key
SQL> ALTER TABLE test1 DROP (col1); -- col1 is referenced by multicolumn constraint ck1
```

Cascading Constraints

The CASCADE CONSTRAINTS clause also drops all multicolumn constraints defined on the dropped columns.

11-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Cascading CONSTRAINTS (continued)

Submitting the following statement drops column pk, the primary key constraint, the foreign key constraint, fk_constraint, and the check constraint, ck1:

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE test1 DROP (pk) CASCADE CONSTRAINTS;
```

If all columns referenced by the constraints defined on the dropped columns are also dropped, then CASCADE CONSTRAINTS is not required. For example, assuming that no other referential constraints from other tables refer to column PK, then it is valid to submit the following statement without the CASCADE CONSTRAINTS clause:

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE test1 DROP (pk, fk, col1);
```

Instructor Note

Let the students know that if any constraint is referenced by columns from other tables or remaining columns in the target table, then you must specify CASCADE CONSTRAINTS. Otherwise, the statement aborts and the error ORA-12991: column is referenced in a multi-column constraint is returned.

Viewing Constraints

Query the USER_CONSTRAINTS table to view all constraint definitions and names.

```
SQL> SELECT constraint_name, constraint_type,  
2          search_condition  
3      FROM    user_constraints  
4     WHERE   table_name = 'EMP';
```

CONSTRAINT_NAME	C SEARCH_CONDITION
SYS_C00674	C EMPNO IS NOT NULL
SYS_C00675	C DEPTNO IS NOT NULL
EMP_EMPNO_PK	P
...	

11-24

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Viewing Constraints

After creating a table, you can confirm its existence by issuing a DESCRIBE command. The only constraint that you can verify is the NOT NULL constraint. To view all constraints on your table, query the USER_CONSTRAINTS table.

The example on the slide displays all the constraints on the EMP table.

Note: Constraints that are not named by the table owner receive the system-assigned constraint name. In constraint type, C stands for CHECK, P for PRIMARY KEY, R for referential integrity, and U for UNIQUE key. Notice that the NOT NULL constraint is really a CHECK constraint.

Instructor Note

Point out to students that the NOT NULL constraint is stored in the data dictionary as a CHECK constraint. Draw their attention to the constraint_type, for the NOT NULL constraints in the slide. The entry in the constraint_type field is C (as in CHECK) for these constraints.

Viewing the Columns Associated with Constraints

View the columns associated with the constraint names in the `USER_CONS_COLUMNS` view.

```
SQL> SELECT constraint_name, column_name
  2  FROM user_cons_columns
  3 WHERE table_name = 'EMP';
```

CONSTRAINT_NAME	COLUMN_NAME
EMP_DEPTNO_FK	DEPTNO
EMP_EMPNO_PK	EMPNO
EMP_MGR_FK	MGR
SYS_C00674	EMPNO
SYS_C00675	DEPTNO

11-25

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Viewing Constraints (continued)

You can view the names of the columns involved in constraints by querying the `USER_CONS_COLUMNS` data dictionary view. This view is especially useful for constraints that use the system-assigned name.

Summary

- **Create the following types of constraints:**
 - NOT NULL
 - UNIQUE
 - PRIMARY KEY
 - FOREIGN KEY
 - CHECK
- **Query the USER_CONSTRAINTS table to view all constraint definitions and names.**

11-26

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Summary

The Oracle Server uses constraints to prevent invalid data entry into tables.

The following constraint types are valid:

- NOT NULL
- UNIQUE
- PRIMARY KEY
- FOREIGN KEY
- CHECK

You can query the USER_CONSTRAINTS table to view all constraint definitions and names.

Practice Overview

- **Adding constraints to existing tables**
- **Adding more columns to a table**
- **Displaying information in data dictionary views**

11-27

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Practice Overview

In this practice, you will add constraints and more columns to a table using the statements covered in this lesson.

Note: It is recommended that you name the constraints that you will be defining during the practices.

Practice 11

1. Add a table-level PRIMARY KEY constraint to the EMPLOYEE table using the ID column. The constraint should be named at creation.

Hint: The constraint is enabled as soon as the ALTER TABLE command executes successfully.

2. Create a PRIMARY KEY constraint on the DEPARTMENT table using the ID column. The constraint should be named at creation.

Hint: The constraint is enabled as soon as the ALTER TABLE command executes successfully.

3. Add a foreign key reference on the EMPLOYEE table that will ensure that the employee is not assigned to a nonexistent department.
4. Confirm that the constraints were added by querying USER_CONSTRAINTS. Note the types and names of the constraints. Save your statement text in a file called p11q4.sql.

CONSTRAINT_NAME	C
DEPARTMENT_ID_PK	P
EMPLOYEE_ID_PK	P
EMPLOYEE_DEPT_ID_FK	R

5. Display the object names and types from the USER_OBJECTS data dictionary view for EMPLOYEE and DEPARTMENT tables. You may want to format the columns for readability. Notice that the new tables and a new index were created.

OBJECT_NAME	OBJECT_TYPE
DEPARTMENT	TABLE
DEPARTMENT_ID_PK	INDEX
EMPLOYEE	TABLE
EMPLOYEE_ID_PK	INDEX

If you have time, complete the following exercise:

6. Modify the EMPLOYEE table. Add a SALARY column of NUMBER datatype, precision 7.

Instructor Note (for page 11-21)

You can also set constraints to VALIDATE or NOVALIDATE, in any combination with ENABLE or DISABLE, where:

- VALIDATE ensures that existing data conforms to the constraint.
- NOVALIDATE means that some existing data may not conform to the constraint.

In addition:

- ENABLE VALIDATE is the same as ENABLE. The constraint is checked and is guaranteed to hold for all rows.
- ENABLE NOVALIDATE means that the constraint is checked, but it does not have to be true for all rows. This allows existing rows to violate the constraint, while ensuring that all new or modified rows are valid.
- In an ALTER TABLE statement, ENABLE NOVALIDATE resumes constraint checking on disabled constraints without first validating all data in the table.
- DISABLE NOVALIDATE is the same as DISABLE. The constraint is not checked and is not necessarily true.
- DISABLE VALIDATE disables the constraint, drops the index on the constraint, and disallows any modification of the constrained columns.

Transitions between these states are governed by the following rules:

- ENABLE implies VALIDATE, unless NOVALIDATE is specified.
- DISABLE implies NOVALIDATE, unless VALIDATE is specified.
- VALIDATE and NOVALIDATE do not have any default implications for the ENABLE and DISABLE states.
- When a unique or primary key moves from the DISABLE state to the ENABLE state, if there is no existing index, a unique index is automatically created.
- Similarly, when a unique or primary key moves from ENABLE to DISABLE and it is enabled with a unique index, the unique index is dropped.
- When any constraint is moved from the NOVALIDATE state to the VALIDATE state, all data must be checked. (This can be very slow.) However, moving from VALIDATE to NOVALIDATE simply forgets that the data was ever checked.
- Moving a single constraint from the ENABLE NOVALIDATE state to the ENABLE VALIDATE state does not block reads, writes, or other DDL statements. It can be done in parallel.

The following statements enable novalidate disabled integrity constraints:

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE dept
      2 ENABLE NOVALIDATE CONSTRAINT dname_ukkey;
SQL> ALTER TABLE dept
      2   ENABLE NOVALIDATE PRIMARY KEY,
      3   ENABLE NOVALIDATE UNIQUE (dname, loc);
```

The following statements enable or validate disabled integrity constraints:

```
SQL>ALTER TABLE dept
      2   MODIFY CONSTRAINT dname_key VALIDATE;
SQL> ALTER TABLE dept
      2   MODIFY PRIMARY KEY ENABLE NOVALIDATE;
```


12

Creating Views

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	20 minutes	Lecture
	20 minutes	Practice
	40 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **Describe a view**
- **Create a view**
- **Retrieve data through a view**
- **Alter the definition of a view**
- **Insert, update, and delete data through a view**
- **Drop a view**

12-2

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Lesson Aim

In this lesson, you will learn to create and use views. You will also learn to query the relevant data dictionary object to retrieve information about views.

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- Describe an inline view**
- Perform “Top-N” Analysis**

12-3

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Lesson Aim

In this lesson, you will also learn to create and use inline views, and perform Top-N analysis using inline-views.

Database Objects

Object	Description
Table	Basic unit of storage; composed of rows and columns
View	Logically represents subsets of data from one or more tables
Sequence	Generates primary key values
Index	Improves the performance of some queries
Synonym	Alternative name for an object

What Is a View?

EMP Table

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	MGR	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7839	KING	PRESIDENT			5000	0	20
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	7839	03-DEC-81	2400	0	20
7934	MILLER	CLERK	7782	22-FEB-81	1300	300	20
7900	JAMES	CLERK	7698	03-DEC-81	950	0	20
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	7698	22-FEB-81	1250	500	30

EMPVU10 View

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB
7839	KING	PRESIDENT
7782	CLARK	MANAGER
7934	MILLER	CLERK

What Is a View?

You can present logical subsets or combinations of data by creating views of tables. A view is a logical table based on a table or another view. A view contains no data of its own but is like a window through which data from tables can be viewed or changed. The tables on which a view is based are called *base tables*. The view is stored as a SELECT statement in the data dictionary.

Why Use Views?

- **To restrict data access**
- **To make complex queries easy**
- **To allow data independence**
- **To present different views of the same data**

12-6

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Advantages of Views

- Views restrict access to the data because the view can display selective columns from the table.
- Views allow users to make simple queries to retrieve the results from complicated queries. For example, views allow users to query information from multiple tables without knowing how to write a join statement.
- Views provide data independence for ad hoc users and application programs. One view can be used to retrieve data from several tables.
- Views provide groups of users access to data according to their particular criteria.

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “CREATE VIEW.”

Simple Views and Complex Views

Feature	Simple Views	Complex Views
Number of tables	One	One or more
Contain functions	No	Yes
Contain groups of data	No	Yes
DML through view	Yes	Not always

Simple Views Versus Complex Views

There are two classifications for views: simple and complex. The basic difference is related to the DML (insert, update, and delete) operations.

- A *simple view* is one that:
 - Derives data from only one table
 - Contains no functions or groups of data
 - Can perform DML through the view
- A *complex view* is one that:
 - Derives data from many tables
 - Contains functions or groups of data
 - Does not always allow DML through the view

Creating a View

- You embed a subquery within the CREATE VIEW statement.

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] [FORCE | NOFORCE] VIEW view
  [(alias[, alias]...)]
AS subquery
[WITH CHECK OPTION [CONSTRAINT constraint]]
[WITH READ ONLY];
```

- The subquery can contain complex SELECT syntax.
- The subquery cannot contain an ORDER BY clause.

Creating a View

You can create a view by embedding a subquery within the CREATE VIEW statement.

In the syntax:

OR REPLACE	re-creates the view if it already exists
FORCE	creates the view regardless of whether or not the base tables exist
NOFORCE	creates the view only if the base tables exist (This is the default.)
<i>view</i>	is the name of the view
<i>alias</i>	specifies names for the expressions selected by the view's query (The number of aliases must match the number of expressions selected by the view.)
<i>subquery</i>	is a complete SELECT statement (You can use aliases for the columns in the SELECT list.)
WITH CHECK OPTION	specifies that only rows accessible to the view can be inserted or updated
<i>constraint</i>	is the name assigned to the CHECK OPTION constraint
WITH READ ONLY	ensures that no DML operations can be performed on this view

Creating a View

- **Create a view, EMPVU10, that contains details of employees in department 10.**

```
SQL> CREATE VIEW      empvu10
  2  AS SELECT      empno, ename, job
  3  FROM          emp
  4  WHERE         deptno = 10;
View created.
```

- **Describe the structure of the view by using the SQL*Plus DESCRIBE command.**

```
SQL> DESCRIBE empvu10
```

12-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating a View (continued)

The example on the slide creates a view that contains the employee number, name, and job title for all the employees in department 10.

You can display the structure of the view by using the SQL*Plus DESCRIBE command.

Name	Null?	Type
EMPNO	NOT NULL	NUMBER(4)
ENAME		VARCHAR2(10)
JOB		VARCHAR2(9)

Guidelines for creating a view:

- The subquery that defines a view can contain complex SELECT syntax, including joins, groups, and subqueries.
- The subquery that defines the view cannot contain an ORDER BY clause. The ORDER BY clause is specified when you retrieve data from the view.
- If you do not specify a constraint name for a view created with the CHECK OPTION, the system will assign a default name in the format SYS_Cn.
- You can use the OR REPLACE option to change the definition of the view without dropping and re-creating it or regranting object privileges previously granted on it.

Creating a View

- **Create a view by using column aliases in the subquery.**

```
SQL> CREATE VIEW      salvu30
  2  AS SELECT          empno EMPLOYEE_NUMBER, ename NAME,
  3                  sal SALARY
  4  FROM            emp
  5  WHERE          deptno = 30;
View created.
```

- **Select the columns from this view by the given alias names.**

12-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating a View (continued)

You can control the column names by including column aliases within the subquery.

The example on the slide creates a view containing the employee number (empno) with the alias EMPLOYEE_NUMBER, name (ename) with the alias NAME, and salary (sal) with the alias SALARY for department 30.

Alternatively, you can control the column names by including column aliases in the CREATE VIEW clause.

Instructor Note

Let students know about a materialized view or snapshot. The terms “snapshot” and “materialized view” are synonymous. Both refer to a table that contains the results of a query of one or more tables, each of which may be located on the same or on a remote database. The tables in the query are called master tables or detail tables. The databases containing the master tables are called the master databases. For more information regarding materialized views refer to:

Oracle8i SQL Reference, Release 8.1.5, “CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW / SNAPSHOT.”

<http://st-doc.us.oracle.com/8.0/815/server.815/a67779/ch4f.htm#24503>

Retrieving Data from a View

```
SQL> SELECT *
2   FROM    salvu30;
```

EMPLOYEE_NUMBER	NAME	SALARY
7698	BLAKE	2850
7654	MARTIN	1250
7499	ALLEN	1600
7844	TURNER	1500
7900	JAMES	950
7521	WARD	1250

```
6 rows selected.
```

12-11

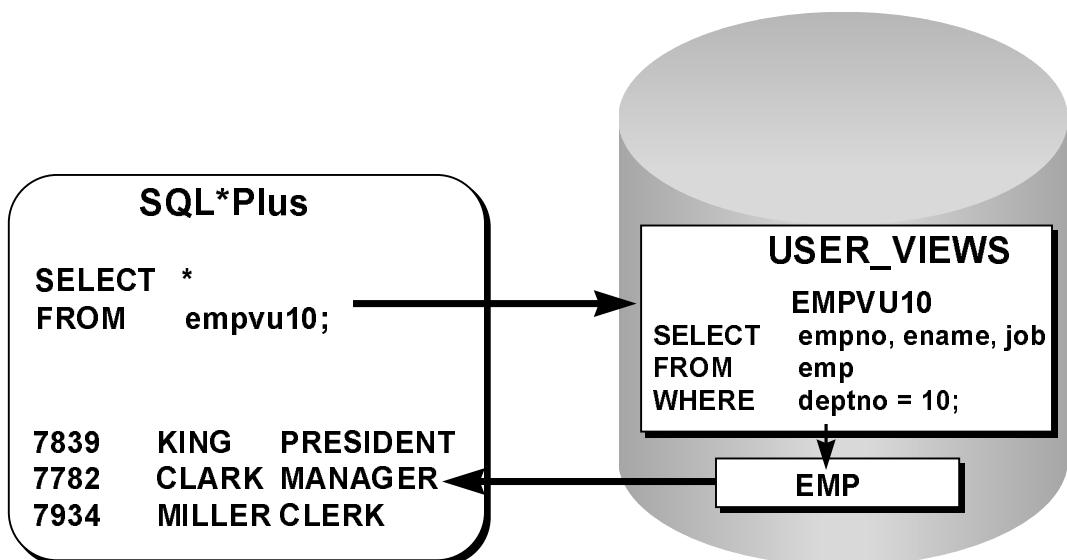
Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Retrieving Data from a View

You can retrieve data from a view as you would from any table. You can either display the contents of the entire view or just view specific rows and columns.

Querying a View



12-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Views in the Data Dictionary

Once your view has been created, you can query the data dictionary table called `USER_VIEWS` to see the name of the view and the view definition. The text of the `SELECT` statement that constitutes your view is stored in a `LONG` column.

Data Access Using Views

When you access data, using a view, the Oracle Server performs the following operations:

1. Retrieves the view definition from the data dictionary table `USER_VIEWS`.
2. Checks access privileges for the view base table.
3. Converts the view query into an equivalent operation on the underlying base table or tables. In other words, data is retrieved from, or an update made to, the base table(s).

Instructor Note

The view text is stored in a column of `LONG` datatype. You may need to set `ARRAYSIZE` to a smaller value or increase the value of `LONG` to view the text.

Modifying a View

- **Modify the EMPVU10 view by using CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW clause. Add an alias for each column name.**

```
SQL> CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW empvu10
  2      (employee_number, employee_name, job_title)
  3  AS SELECT      empno, ename, job
  4  FROM          emp
  5  WHERE         deptno = 10;
View created.
```

- **Column aliases in the CREATE VIEW clause are listed in the same order as the columns in the subquery.**

12-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Modifying a View

The OR REPLACE option allows a view to be created even if one exists with this name already, thus replacing the old version of the view for its owner. This means that the view can be altered without dropping, re-creating, and regranting object privileges.

Note: When assigning column aliases in the CREATE VIEW clause, remember that the aliases are listed in the same order as the columns in the subquery.

Instructor Note

The OR REPLACE option started with Oracle7. With earlier versions of Oracle, if the view needed to be changed, it had to be dropped and re-created.

Demo: 112emp.sql

Purpose: To illustrate creating a view using aliases.

Creating a Complex View

Create a complex view that contains group functions to display values from two tables.

```
SQL> CREATE VIEW      dept_sum_vu
  2          (name, minsal, maxsal, avgsal)
  3  AS SELECT      d.dname, MIN(e.sal), MAX(e.sal),
  4          AVG(e.sal)
  5  FROM          emp e, dept d
  6  WHERE          e.deptno = d.deptno
  7  GROUP BY      d.dname;
View created.
```

12-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating a Complex View

The example on the slide creates a complex view of the department names, minimum salary, maximum salary, and average salary by the department. Note that alternative names have been specified for the view. This is a requirement if any column of the view is derived from a function or an expression.

You can view the structure of the view by using the SQL*Plus DESCRIBE command. Display the contents of the view by issuing a SELECT statement.

```
SQL> SELECT  *
  2  FROM    dept_sum_vu;

NAME          MINSAL      MAXSAL      AVGSAL
-----  -----  -----
ACCOUNTING      1300      5000  2916.6667
RESEARCH         800       3000      2175
SALES           950       2850  1566.6667
```

Rules for Performing DML Operations on a View

- You can perform DML operations on simple views.
- You cannot remove a row if the view contains the following:
 - Group functions
 - A GROUP BY clause
 - The DISTINCT keyword
 - The pseudocolumn ROWNUM keyword

12-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Performing DML Operations on a View

You can perform DML operations on data through a view if those operations follow certain rules.

You can remove a row from a view unless it contains any of the following:

- Group functions
- A GROUP BY clause
- The pseudocolumn ROWNUM keyword

Instructor Note

For each row returned by a query, the ROWNUM pseudocolumn returns a number indicating the order in which Oracle server selects the row from a table or set of joined rows. The first row selected has a ROWNUM of 1, the second has 2, and so on.

Rules for Performing DML Operations on a View

- You cannot modify data in a view if it contains:
 - Any of the conditions mentioned in the previous slide
 - Columns defined by expressions
 - The ROWNUM pseudocolumn
- You cannot add data if:
 - The view contains any of the conditions mentioned above or in the previous slide
 - There are NOT NULL columns in the base tables that are not selected by the view

12-16

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Performing DML Operations on a View (continued)

You can modify data in a view unless it contains any of the conditions mentioned in the previous slide and any of the following:

- Columns defined by expressions—for example, SAL * 12
- The ROWNUM pseudocolumn

You can add data through a view unless it contains any of the above and there are NOT NULL columns, without a default value, in the base table that are not selected by the view. All required values must be present in the view. Remember that you are adding values directly into the underlying table *through* the view.

For more information, see *Oracle8 Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “CREATE VIEW.”

Instructor Note

Oracle7.3 and Oracle8 allow you, with some restrictions, to modify views that involve joins. The restrictions for DML operations described above also apply to join views. Any UPDATE, INSERT, or DELETE statement on a join view can modify only one underlying base table. If at least one column in the subquery join has a unique index, then it may be possible to modify one base table in a join view. You can query USER_UPDATABLE_COLUMNS to see whether the columns in a join view are updatable.

(For page 12-17)

If the user does not supply a constraint name, the system assigns a name in the form SYS_C n , where n is an integer that makes the constraint name unique within the system.

Demo: 112vu1.sql, 112vu2.sql

Purpose: To illustrate creating views with and without the CHECK OPTION.

Using the WITH CHECK OPTION Clause

- You can ensure that DML on the view stays within the domain of the view by using the WITH CHECK OPTION clause.

```
SQL> CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW empvu20
  2  AS SELECT      *
  3    FROM          emp
  4   WHERE         deptno = 20
  5   WITH CHECK OPTION CONSTRAINT empvu20_ck;
View created.
```

- Any attempt to change the department number for any row in the view will fail because it violates the WITH CHECK OPTION constraint.

12-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using the WITH CHECK OPTION Clause

It is possible to perform referential integrity checks through views. You can also enforce constraints at the database level. The view can be used to protect data integrity, but the use is very limited.

The WITH CHECK OPTION clause specifies that INSERTS and UPDATES performed through the view are not allowed to create rows that the view cannot select, and therefore it allows integrity constraints and data validation checks to be enforced on data being inserted or updated.

If there is an attempt to perform DML operations on rows that the view has not selected, an error is displayed, with the constraint name if that has been specified.

```
SQL> UPDATE empvu20
  2  SET    deptno = 10
  3 WHERE  empno = 7788;
update empvu20
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-01402: view WITH CHECK OPTION where-clause violation
```

Note: No rows are updated because if the department number were to change to 10, the view would no longer be able to see that employee. Therefore, with the WITH CHECK OPTION clause, the view can see only department 20 employees and does not allow the department number for those employees to be changed through the view.

Denying DML Operations

- You can ensure that no DML operations occur by adding the WITH READ ONLY option to your view definition.

```
SQL> CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW empvu10
  2      (employee_number, employee_name, job_title)
  3  AS SELECT      empno, ename, job
  4    FROM          emp
  5   WHERE         deptno = 10
  6  WITH READ ONLY;
View created.
```

- Any attempt to perform a DML on any row in the view will result in Oracle Server error.

12-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Denying DML Operations

You can ensure that no DML operations occur on your view by creating it with the WITH READ ONLY option. The example on the slide modifies the EMPVU10 view to prevent any DML operations on the view.

Any attempts to remove a row from the view will result in an error.

```
SQL> DELETE FROM empvu10
  2 WHERE employee_number = 7782 ;
DELETE FROM empvu10
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-01752: Cannot delete from view without exactly one key-preserved
table
```

Any attempts to insert a row or modify a row using the view will result in Oracle Server error - 01733: virtual column not allowed here.

Removing a View

Remove a view without losing data because a view is based on underlying tables in the database.

```
DROP VIEW view;
```

```
SQL> DROP VIEW empvu10;  
View dropped.
```

12-19

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Removing a View

You use the `DROP VIEW` statement to remove a view. The statement removes the view definition from the database. Dropping views has no effect on the tables on which the view was based. Views or other applications based on deleted views become invalid. Only the creator or a user with the `DROP ANY VIEW` privilege can remove a view.

In the syntax:

view is the name of the view

Inline Views

- An inline view is a subquery with an alias (correlation name) that you can use within a SQL statement.
- An inline view is similar to using a named subquery in the FROM clause of the main query.
- An inline view is not a schema object.

12-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Inline Views

An inline view in the FROM clause of a SELECT statement defines a data source for the SELECT statement. In the example below the inline view b returns the details of all department numbers and the maximum salary for each department from the EMP table. The WHERE a.deptno = b.deptno AND a.sal < b.maxsal clause of the main query displays employee names, salaries, department numbers, and maximum salaries for all the employees who earn less than the maximum salary in their department .

```
SQL> SELECT a.ename, a.sal, a.deptno, b.maxsal
  2   FROM emp a, (SELECT deptno, max(sal) maxsal
  3                   FROM emp
  4                   GROUP BY deptno) b
  5  WHERE a.deptno = b.deptno
  6  AND    a.sal < b.maxsal;
```

ENAME	SAL	DEPTNO	MAXSAL
CLARK	2450	10	5000
MILLER	1300	10	5000
...			
TURNER	1500	30	2850
JAMES	950	30	2850

10 rows selected.

“Top-N” Analysis

- **Top-N queries ask for the n largest or smallest values of a column.**
 - **What are the ten best selling products?**
 - **What are the ten worst selling products ?**
- **Both largest values and smallest values sets are considered Top-N queries.**

12-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

“Top-N” Analysis

Top-N queries are useful in scenarios where the need is to display only the n top-most or the n bottom-most records from a table based on a condition. This result set can be used for further analysis. For example using Top-N analysis you can perform the following types of queries:

- The top three earners in the company
- The four most recent recruits in the company
- The top two sales representatives who have sold the maximum number of products
- The top three products that have had the maximum sales in the last six months

Performing “Top-N” Analysis

The high-level structure of a Top-N analysis query is:

```
SQL> SELECT [column_list], ROWNUM
  2 FROM  (SELECT [column_list] FROM table
  3          ORDER BY Top-N_column)
  4 WHERE  ROWNUM <= N
```

12-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Performing “Top-N” Analysis

Top-N queries use a consistent nested query structure with the elements described below:

- Subquery or an inline view to generate the sorted list of data. The subquery or the inline-view includes the ORDER BY clause to ensure that the ranking is in the desired order. For results retrieving the largest values, a DESC parameter is needed.
- Outer query to limit the number of rows in the final result set. The outer query includes the following components:
 - The ROWNUM pseudo-column, which assigns a sequential value starting with 1 to each of the rows returned from the subquery.
 - WHERE clause, which specifies the n rows to be returned. The outer WHERE clause must use a < or <= operator.

Example of “Top-N” Analysis

To display the top three earners names and salaries from the EMP table.

```
SQL> SELECT ROWNUM as RANK, ename, sal
  2  FROM  (SELECT ename, sal FROM emp
  3          ORDER BY sal DESC)
  4 WHERE ROWNUM <= 3;
```

RANK	ENAME	SAL
1	KING	5000
2	SCOTT	3000
3	FORD	3000

12-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Example of “Top-N” Analysis

The example on the slide describes how to display the names and salaries of the top three earners from the EMP table. The subquery returns the details of all employee names and salaries from the EMP table, sorted in the descending order of the salaries. The WHERE ROWNUM < 3 clause of the main query ensures that only the first three records from this result set is displayed.

Here is another example of Top-N analysis that uses an inline view. The example below uses the inline view E to display the four most senior employees in the company.

```
SQL> SELECT ROWNUM as SENIOR,E.ename, E.hiredate
  2  FROM  (SELECT ename,hiredate FROM emp
  3          ORDER BY hiredate)E
  4 WHERE rownum <= 4;
```

SENIOR	ENAME	HIREDATE
1	SMITH	17-DEC-80
2	ALLEN	20-FEB-81
3	WARD	22-FEB-81
4	JONES	02-APR-81

Summary

- **A view is derived from data in other tables or other views.**
- **A view provides the following advantages:**
 - **Restricts database access**
 - **Simplifies queries**
 - **Provides data independence**
 - **Allows multiple views of the same data**
 - **Can be dropped without removing the underlying data**

12-24

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

What Is a View?

A view is based on a table or another view and acts as a window through which data on tables can be viewed or changed. A view does not contain data. The definition of the view is stored in the data dictionary. You can see the definition of the view in the `USER_VIEWS` data dictionary table.

Advantages of Views

- Restrict database access
- Simplify queries
- Provide data independence
- Allow multiple views of the same data
- Can be removed without affecting the underlying data

View Options

- Can be a simple view based on one table
- Can be a complex view based on more than one table or can contain groups of functions
- Can be replaced if one of the same name exists
- Can Contain a check constraint
- Can be read-only

Summary

- **An inline view is a subquery with an alias name.**
- **“Top-N” analysis can be done using:**
 - Subquery
 - Outer query

12-25

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Practice Overview

- **Creating a simple view**
- **Creating a complex view**
- **Creating a view with a check constraint**
- **Attempting to modify data in the view**
- **Displaying view definitions**
- **Removing views**

12-26

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Practice Overview

In this practice, you will create simple and complex views and attempt to perform DML statements on the views.

Practice 12

1. Create a view called EMP_VU based on the employee number, employee name, and department number from the EMP table. Change the heading for the employee name to EMPLOYEE.
2. Display the contents of the EMP_VU view.

```
EMPNO  EMPLOYEE  DEPTNO
-----  -----
 7839  KING        10
 7698  BLAKE       30
 7782  CLARK       10
 7566  JONES       20
 7654  MARTIN      30
 7499  ALLEN       30
 7844  TURNER      30
 7900  JAMES       30
 7521  WARD        30
 7902  FORD         20
 7369  SMITH       20
 7788  SCOTT       20
 7876  ADAMS       20
 7934  MILLER      10
14 rows selected.
```

3. Select the view name and text from the data dictionary USER_VIEWS.

```
VIEW_NAME    TEXT
-----
EMP_VU        SELECT empno, ename employee, deptno
                  FROM emp
```

4. Using your view EMP_VU, enter a query to display all employee names and department numbers.

```
EMPLOYEE      DEPTNO
-----  -----
KING           10
BLAKE          30
CLARK          10
JONES          20
MARTIN         30
...
14 rows selected.
```

Practice 12 (continued)

5. Create a view named DEPT20 that contains the employee number, employee name, and department number for all employees in department 20. Label the view column EMPLOYEE_ID, EMPLOYEE, and DEPARTMENT_ID. Do not allow an employee to be reassigned to another department through the view.
6. Display the structure and contents of the DEPT20 view.

Name	Null?	Type
EMPLOYEE_ID	NOT NULL	NUMBER (4)
EMPLOYEE		VARCHAR2 (10)
DEPARTMENT_ID	NOT NULL	NUMBER (2)
<hr/>		
EMPLOYEE_ID	EMPLOYEE	DEPARTMENT_ID
<hr/>		
7566	JONES	20
7902	FORD	20
7369	SMITH	20
7788	SCOTT	20
7876	ADAMS	20

7. Attempt to reassign Smith to department 30.

If you have time, complete the following exercise:

8. Create a view called SALARY_VU based on the employee name, department name, salary, and salary grade for all employees. Label the columns Employee, Department, Salary, and Grade, respectively.

13

Other Database Objects

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Schedule:	Timing	Topic
	20 minutes	Lecture
	20 minutes	Practice
	40 minutes	Total

Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- **Describe some database objects and their uses**
- **Create, maintain, and use sequences**
- **Create and maintain indexes**
- **Create private and public synonyms**

13-2

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Lesson Aim

In this lesson, you will learn how to create and maintain some of the other commonly used database objects. These objects include sequences, indexes, and synonyms.

Database Objects

Object	Description
Table	Basic unit of storage; composed of rows and columns
View	Logically represents subsets of data from one or more tables
Sequence	Generates primary key values
Index	Improves the performance of some queries
Synonym	Alternative name for an object

Database Objects

Many applications require the use of unique numbers as primary key values. You can either build code into the application to handle this requirement or use a sequence to generate unique numbers.

If you want to improve the performance of some queries, you should consider creating an index. You can also use indexes to enforce uniqueness on a column or a collection of columns.

You can provide alternative names for objects by using synonyms.

What Is a Sequence?

- **Automatically generates unique numbers**
- **Is a sharable object**
- **Is typically used to create a primary key value**
- **Replaces application code**
- **Speeds up the efficiency of accessing sequence values when cached in memory**

13-4

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

What Is a Sequence?

A sequence is a database object created by a user, and can be shared by multiple users to generate unique integers. You can use the sequences to automatically generate primary key values.

A typical usage for sequences is to create a primary key value, which must be unique for each row. The sequence is generated and incremented (or decremented) by an internal Oracle8 routine. This can be a time-saving object because it can reduce the amount of application code needed to write a sequence-generating routine.

Sequence numbers are stored and generated independently of tables. Therefore, the same sequence can be used for multiple tables.

The CREATE SEQUENCE Statement

Define a sequence to generate sequential numbers automatically.

```
CREATE SEQUENCE sequence
    [INCREMENT BY n]
    [START WITH n]
    [{MAXVALUE n | NOMAXVALUE}]
    [{MINVALUE n | NOMINVALUE}]
    [{CYCLE | NOCYCLE}]
    [{CACHE n | NOCACHE}];
```

Creating a Sequence

Automatically generate sequential numbers by using the CREATE SEQUENCE statement.

In the syntax:

<i>sequence</i>	is the name of the sequence generator
INCREMENT BY <i>n</i>	specifies the interval between sequence numbers where <i>n</i> is an integer (If this clause is omitted, the sequence will increment by 1.)
START WITH <i>n</i>	specifies the first sequence number to be generated (If this clause is omitted, the sequence will start with 1.)
MAXVALUE <i>n</i>	specifies the maximum value the sequence can generate
NOMAXVALUE	specifies a maximum value of 10^{27} for an ascending sequence and -1 for a descending sequence (This is the default option.)
MINVALUE <i>n</i>	specifies the minimum sequence value
NOMINVALUE	specifies a minimum value of 1 for an ascending sequence and -(10^{26}) for a descending sequence (This is the default option.)
CYCLE NOCYCLE	specifies that the sequence continues to generate values after reaching either its maximum or minimum value or does not generate additional values (NOCYCLE is the default option.)
CACHE <i>n</i> NOCACHE	specifies how many values the Oracle Server will preallocate and keep in memory (By default, the Oracle Server will cache 20 values.)

Creating a Sequence

- Create a sequence named DEPT_DEPTNO to be used for the primary key of the DEPT table.
- Do not use the CYCLE option.

```
SQL> CREATE SEQUENCE dept_deptno
  2      INCREMENT BY 1
  3      START WITH 91
  4      MAXVALUE 100
  5      NOCACHE
  6      NOCYCLE;
Sequence created.
```

13-6

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating a Sequence (continued)

The example on the slide creates a sequence named DEPT_DEPTNO to be used for the DEPTNO column of the DEPT table. The sequence starts at 91, does not allow caching, and does not allow the sequence to cycle.

Do not use the CYCLE option if the sequence is used to generate primary key values unless you have a reliable mechanism that purges old rows faster than the sequence cycles.

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “CREATE SEQUENCE.”

Instructor Note

If the INCREMENT BY value is negative, the sequence will descend.

Also, ORDER | NOORDER options are available. The ORDER option guarantees that sequence values are generated in order. It is not important if you use the sequence to generate primary key values. This option is relevant only with the Parallel Server option.

If sequence values are cached, they will be lost if there is a system failure.

Confirming Sequences

- Verify your sequence values in the **USER_SEQUENCES** data dictionary table.

```
SQL> SELECT sequence_name, min_value, max_value,  
2           increment_by, last_number  
3   FROM user_sequences;
```

- The **LAST_NUMBER** column displays the next available sequence number.

13-7

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Confirming Sequences

Once you have created your sequence, it is documented in the data dictionary. Since a sequence is a database object, you can identify it in the **USER_OBJECTS** data dictionary table.

You can also confirm the settings of the sequence by selecting from the data dictionary **USER_SEQUENCES** table.

SEQUENCE_NAME	MIN_VALUE	MAX_VALUE	INCREMENT_BY	LAST_NUMBER
CUSTID	1	1.000E+27	1	109
DEPT_DEPTNO	1	100	1	91
ORDID	1	1.000E+27	1	622
PRODID	1	1.000E+27	1	200381

Instructor Note

Demo: 113dd.sql

Purpose: To illustrate the **USER_SEQUENCES** data dictionary view and its contents.

NEXTVAL and CURRVAL Pseudocolumns

- **NEXTVAL returns the next available sequence value.**
It returns a unique value every time it is referenced, even for different users.
- **CURRVAL obtains the current sequence value.**
NEXTVAL must be issued for that sequence before CURRVAL contains a value.

13-8

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using a Sequence

Once you create your sequence, you can use the sequence to generate sequential numbers for use in your tables. Reference the sequence values by using the NEXTVAL and CURRVAL pseudocolumns.

NEXTVAL and CURRVAL Pseudocolumns

The NEXTVAL pseudocolumn is used to extract successive sequence numbers from a specified sequence. You must qualify NEXTVAL with the sequence name. When you reference *sequence.NEXTVAL*, a new sequence number is generated and the current sequence number is placed in CURRVAL.

The CURRVAL pseudocolumn is used to refer to a sequence number that the current user has just generated. NEXTVAL must be used to generate a sequence number in the current user's session before CURRVAL can be referenced. You must qualify CURRVAL with the sequence name. When *sequence.CURRVAL* is referenced, the last value returned to that user's process is displayed.

NEXTVAL and CURRVAL

Pseudocolumns

- **NEXTVAL returns the next available sequence value.**
It returns a unique value every time it is referenced, even for different users.
- **CURRVAL obtains the current sequence value.**
NEXTVAL must be issued for that sequence before CURRVAL contains a value.

13-9

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Rules for Using NEXTVAL and CURRVAL

You can use NEXTVAL and CURRVAL in the following:

- The SELECT list of a SELECT statement that is not part of a subquery
- The SELECT list of a subquery in an INSERT statement
- The VALUES clause of an INSERT statement
- The SET clause of an UPDATE statement

You cannot use NEXTVAL and CURRVAL in the following:

- A SELECT list of a view
- A SELECT statement with the DISTINCT keyword
- A SELECT statement with the GROUP BY, HAVING, or ORDER BY clauses
- A subquery in a SELECT, DELETE, or UPDATE statement
- A DEFAULT expression in a CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “Pseudocolumns” section and “CREATE SEQUENCE.”

Instructor Note

Be sure to point out the rules listed on this page.

Using a Sequence

- Insert a new department named “MARKETING” in San Diego.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO      dept(deptno, dname, loc)
  2  VALUES              (dept_deptno.NEXTVAL,
  3                        'MARKETING', 'SAN DIEGO');
 1 row created.
```

- View the current value for the DEPT_DEPTNO sequence.

```
SQL> SELECT  dept_deptno.CURRVAL
  2  FROM    dual;
```

13-10

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Using a Sequence

The example on the slide inserts a new department in the DEPT table. It uses the DEPT_DEPTNO sequence for generating a new department number.

You can view the current value of the sequence:

```
SQL> SELECT  dept_deptno.CURRVAL
  2  FROM    dual;
```

CURRVAL

91

Suppose now you want to hire employees to staff the new department. The INSERT statement that can be executed repeatedly for all the new employees can include the following code:

```
SQL> INSERT INTO emp ...
  2  VALUES (emp_empno.NEXTVAL, dept_deptno.CURRVAL, ...);
```

Note: The above example assumes that a sequence EMP_EMPNO has already been created for generating a new employee number.

Using a Sequence

- **Caching sequence values in memory allows faster access to those values.**
- **Gaps in sequence values can occur when:**
 - A rollback occurs
 - The system crashes
 - A sequence is used in another table
- **View the next available sequence, if it was created with NOCACHE, by querying the USER_SEQUENCES table.**

13-11

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Caching Sequence Values

Cache sequences in the memory to allow faster access to those sequence values. The cache is populated at the first reference to the sequence. Each request for the next sequence value is retrieved from the cached sequence. After the last sequence is used, the next request for the sequence pulls another cache of sequences into memory.

Beware of Gaps in Your Sequence

Although sequence generators issue sequential numbers without gaps, this action occurs independent of a commit or rollback. Therefore, if you roll back a statement containing a sequence, the number is lost.

Another event that can cause gaps in the sequence is a system crash. If the sequence caches values in the memory, then those values are lost if the system crashes.

Because sequences are not tied directly to tables, the same sequence can be used for multiple tables. If this occurs, each table can contain gaps in the sequential numbers.

Viewing the Next Available Sequence Value Without Incrementing It

If the sequence was created with NOCACHE, it is possible to view the next available sequence value without incrementing it by querying the USER_SEQUENCES table.

Instructor Note

Frequently used sequences should be created with caching to improve efficiency. For cached sequences, there is no way to find out what the next available sequence value will be without actually obtaining, and using up, that value. It is recommended that users resist finding the next sequence value. Trust the system to provide a unique value each time a sequence is used in an INSERT statement.

Modifying a Sequence

Change the increment value, maximum value, minimum value, cycle option, or cache option.

```
SQL> ALTER SEQUENCE dept_deptno
  2      INCREMENT BY 1
  3      MAXVALUE 999999
  4      NOCACHE
  5      NOCYCLE;
Sequence altered.
```

13-12

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Altering a Sequence

If you reach the MAXVALUE limit for your sequence, no additional values from the sequence will be allocated and you will receive an error indicating that the sequence exceeds the MAXVALUE. To continue to use the sequence, you can modify it by using the ALTER SEQUENCE statement.

Syntax

```
ALTER SEQUENCE sequence
  [INCREMENT BY n]
  [{MAXVALUE n | NOMAXVALUE}]
  [{MINVALUE n | NOMINVALUE}]
  [{CYCLE | NOCYCLE}]
  [{CACHE n | NOCACHE}];
```

where: *sequence* is the name of the sequence generator

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “ALTER SEQUENCE.”

Guidelines for Modifying a Sequence

- You must be the owner or have the ALTER privilege for the sequence.
- Only future sequence numbers are affected.
- The sequence must be dropped and re-created to restart the sequence at a different number.
- Some validation is performed.

13-13

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Guidelines

- You must be the owner have the ALTER privilege for the sequence in order to modify it.
- Only future sequence numbers are affected by the ALTER SEQUENCE statement.
- The START WITH option cannot be changed using ALTER SEQUENCE. The sequence must be dropped and re-created in order to restart the sequence at a different number.
- Some validation is performed. For example, a new MAXVALUE cannot be imposed that is less than the current sequence number.

```
SQL> ALTER SEQUENCE dept_deptno
  2      INCREMENT BY 1
  3      MAXVALUE 90
  4      NOCACHE
  5      NOCYCLE;
ALTER SEQUENCE dept_deptno
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-04009: MAXVALUE cannot be made to be less than the current
value
```

Removing a Sequence

- Remove a sequence from the data dictionary by using the **DROP SEQUENCE** statement.
- Once removed, the sequence can no longer be referenced.

```
SQL> DROP SEQUENCE dept_deptno;
Sequence dropped.
```

13-14

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Removing a Sequence

To remove a sequence from the data dictionary, use the **DROP SEQUENCE** statement. You must be the owner of the sequence or have the **DROP ANY SEQUENCE** privilege to remove it.

Syntax

```
DROP SEQUENCE sequence;
```

where: *sequence* is the name of the sequence generator

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “**DROP SEQUENCE**.”

What Is an Index?

- **Is a schema object**
- **Is used by the Oracle Server to speed up the retrieval of rows by using a pointer**
- **Can reduce disk I/O by using rapid path access method to locate the data quickly**
- **Is independent of the table it indexes**
- **Is used and maintained automatically by the Oracle Server**

13-15

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

What Is an Index?

An Oracle Server index is a schema object that can speed up the retrieval of rows by using a pointer. Indexes can be created explicitly or automatically. If you do not have an index on the column, then a full table scan will occur.

An index provides direct and fast access to rows in a table. Its purpose is to reduce the necessity of disk I/O by using an indexed path to locate data quickly. The index is used and maintained automatically by the Oracle Server. Once an index is created, no direct activity is required by the user.

Indexes are logically and physically independent of the table they index. This means that they can be created or dropped at any time and have no effect on the base tables or other indexes.

Note: When you drop a table, corresponding indexes are also dropped.

For more information, see *Oracle Server Concepts Manual*, Release 8, “Schema Objects” section, “Indexes” topic.

Instructor Note

The decision to create indexes is a global, high-level decision. Creation and maintenance of indexes is often a DBA task.

Reference the column that has an index in the predicate WHERE clause without modifying the indexed column with a function or expression.

A ROWID is a hexadecimal string representation of the row address containing block identifier, row location in the block, and the database file identifier. The fastest way to access any particular row is by referencing its ROWID.

How Are Indexes Created?

- **Automatically:** A unique index is created automatically when you define a PRIMARY KEY or UNIQUE constraint in a table definition.
- **Manually:** Users can create nonunique indexes on columns to speed up access time to the rows.

13-16

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

How Are Indexes Created?

Two types of indexes can be created. One type is a unique index. The Oracle Server automatically creates this index when you define a column in a table to have a PRIMARY KEY or a UNIQUE key constraint. The name of the index is the name given to the constraint.

The other type of index that a user can create is a nonunique index. For example, you can create a FOREIGN KEY column index for a join in a query to improve retrieval speed.

Creating an Index

- Create an index on one or more columns.

```
CREATE INDEX index
ON table (column[, column]...);
```

- Improve the speed of query access on the ENAME column in the EMP table.

```
SQL> CREATE INDEX emp_ename_idx
  2 ON emp(ename);
Index created.
```

13-17

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating an Index

Create an index on one or more columns by issuing the CREATE INDEX statement.

In the syntax:

<i>index</i>	is the name of the index
<i>table</i>	is the name of the table
<i>column</i>	is the name of the column in the table to be indexed

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “CREATE INDEX.”

Instructor Note

To create an index in your schema, you must have CREATE INDEX privileges.

Another option in the syntax is the UNIQUE keyword. Emphasize that Oracle recommends that you do not explicitly define unique indexes on tables. Instead define uniqueness in the table as a constraint. The Oracle Server enforces unique integrity constraints by automatically defining a unique index on the unique key.

When to Create an Index

- **The column is used frequently in the WHERE clause or in a join condition.**
- **The column contains a wide range of values.**
- **The column contains a large number of null values.**
- **Two or more columns are frequently used together in a WHERE clause or a join condition.**
- **The table is large and most queries are expected to retrieve less than 2–4% of the rows.**

13-18

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

More Is Not Always Better

More indexes on a table does not mean it will speed up queries. Each DML operation that is committed on a table with indexes means that the indexes must be updated. The more indexes you have associated with a table, the more effort the Oracle Server must make to update all the indexes after a DML.

When to Create an Index

- The column is used frequently in the WHERE clause or in a join condition.
- The column contains a wide range of values.
- The column contains a large number of null values.
- Two or more columns are frequently used together in a WHERE clause or join condition.
- The table is large and most queries are expected to retrieve less than 2–4% of the rows.

Remember that if you want to enforce uniqueness, you should define a unique constraint in the table definition. Then a unique index is created automatically.

When Not to Create an Index

- **The table is small.**
- **The columns are not often used as a condition in the query.**
- **Most queries are expected to retrieve more than 2–4% of the rows.**
- **The table is updated frequently.**

13-19

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

When Not to Create an Index

- The table is small.
- The columns are not often used as a condition in the query.
- Most queries are expected to retrieve more than 2–4% of the rows.
- The table is updated frequently. If you have one or more indexes on a table, the DML statements that access the table take more time.

Instructor Note

Null values are not included in the index.

To optimize joins, you can create an index on the FOREIGN KEY column, which will speed up the search to match rows to the PRIMARY KEY column.

The optimizer does not use an index if the WHERE clause contains the IS NULL expression.

Confirming Indexes

- The **USER_INDEXES** data dictionary view contains the name of the index and its uniqueness.
- The **USER_IND_COLUMNS** view contains the index name, the table name, and the column name.

```
SQL> SELECT    ic.index_name, ic.column_name,
2          ic.column_position col_pos, ix.uniqueness
3  FROM      user_indexes ix, user_ind_columns ic
4  WHERE     ic.index_name = ix.index_name
5  AND       ic.table_name = 'EMP';
```

13-20

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Confirming Indexes

Confirm the existence of indexes from the **USER_INDEXES** data dictionary view. You can also check the columns involved in an index by querying the **USER_IND_COLUMNS** view.

The example on the slide displays all the previously created indexes, affected column names, and uniqueness on the EMP table.

INDEX_NAME	COLUMN_NAME	COL_POS	UNIQUENESS
EMP_EMPNO_PK	EMPNO	1	UNIQUE
EMP_ENAME_IDX	ENAME	1	NONUNIQUE

Note: The output has been formatted.

Function-Based Indexes

- A function-based index is an index based on expressions.
- The index expression is built from table columns, constants, SQL functions, and user-defined functions.

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE test (col1 NUMBER);

SQL> CREATE INDEX test_index ON test(col1,col1+10);

SQL> SELECT col1+10 FROM test;
```

13-21

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Function-Based Index

Function-based indexes defined with the UPPER(column_name) or LOWER(column_name) keywords allow case-insensitive searches. For example, the following index:

```
SQL> CREATE INDEX uppercase_idx ON emp (UPPER(ename));
```

Facilitates processing queries such as:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM emp WHERE UPPER(ename) = 'KING';
```

To ensure that Oracle will use the index rather than performing a full table scan, be sure that the value of the function is not null in subsequent queries. For example, the statement below is guaranteed to use the index, but without the where clause Oracle may perform a full table scan.

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM emp
  2 WHERE UPPER(ename) IS NOT NULL
  3 ORDER BY UPPER(ename);
```

Oracle treats indexes with columns marked DESC as function-based indexes. The columns marked DESC are sorted in descending order.

Instructor Note

Let participants know that to create a function-based index in your own schema on your own table, you must have the CREATE INDEX and QUERY REWRITE system privileges. To create the index in another schema or on another schema's table, you must have the CREATE ANY INDEX and GLOBAL QUERY REWRITE privilege. The table owner must also have the EXECUTE object privilege on the functions used in the function-based index.

Removing an Index

- Remove an index from the data dictionary.

```
SQL> DROP INDEX index;
```

- Remove the EMP_ENAME_IDX index from the data dictionary.

```
SQL> DROP INDEX emp_ename_idx;  
Index dropped.
```

- To drop an index, you must be the owner of the index or have the DROP ANY INDEX privilege.

13-22

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

 ORACLE®

Removing an Index

You cannot modify indexes. To change an index, you must drop it and then re-create it. Remove an index definition from the data dictionary by issuing the DROP INDEX statement. To drop an index, you must be the owner of the index or have the DROP ANY INDEX privilege.

In the syntax:

index is the name of the index

Instructor Note

Remind students that if they drop a table, indexes and constraints are automatically dropped, but views and sequences remain.

Synonyms

Simplify access to objects by creating a synonym (another name for an object).

- Refer to a table owned by another user.
- Shorten lengthy object names.

```
CREATE [PUBLIC] SYNONYM synonym
FOR object;
```

13-23

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating a Synonym for an Object

To refer to a table owned by another user, you need to prefix the table name with the name of the user who created it followed by a period. Creating a synonym eliminates the need to qualify the object name with the schema and provides you with an alternative name for a table, view, sequence, procedure, or other objects. This method can be especially useful with lengthy object names, such as views.

In the syntax:

PUBLIC	creates a synonym accessible to all users
<i>synonym</i>	is the name of the synonym to be created
<i>object</i>	identifies the object for which the synonym is created

Guidelines

- The object cannot be contained in a package.
- A private synonym name must be distinct from all other objects owned by the same user.

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “CREATE SYNONYM.”

Creating and Removing Synonyms

- Create a shortened name for the DEPT_SUM_VU view.

```
SQL> CREATE SYNONYM d_sum  
2 FOR dept_sum_vu;  
Synonym Created.
```

- Drop a synonym.

```
SQL> DROP SYNONYM d_sum;  
Synonym dropped.
```

13-24

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Creating a Synonym for an Object (continued)

The slide example creates a synonym for the DEPT_SUM_VU view for quicker reference.

The DBA can create a public synonym accessible to all users. The following example creates a public synonym named DEPT for Alice's DEPT table:

```
SQL> CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM dept  
2 FOR alice.dept;  
Synonym created.
```

Removing a Synonym

To drop a synonym, use the DROP SYNONYM statement. Only the DBA can drop a public synonym.

```
SQL> DROP SYNONYM dept;  
Synonym dropped.
```

For more information, see *Oracle Server SQL Reference*, Release 8, “DROP SYNONYM.”

Instructor Note

In the Oracle Server, the DBA can specifically grant the CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM to any user, allowing that user to create public synonyms.

Summary

- Automatically generate sequence numbers by using a sequence generator.
- View sequence information in the **USER_SEQUENCES** data dictionary table.
- Create indexes to improve query retrieval speed.
- View index information in the **USER_INDEXES** dictionary table.
- Use synonyms to provide alternative names for objects.

13-25

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Sequences

The sequence generator can be used to automatically generate sequence numbers for rows in tables. This can be time saving and can reduce the amount of application code needed.

A sequence is a database object that can be shared with other users. Information about the sequence can be found in the **USER_SEQUENCES** table of the data dictionary.

To use a sequence, reference it with either the **NEXTVAL** or the **CURRVAL** pseudocolumns.

- Retrieve the next number in the sequence by referencing *sequence.NEXTVAL*.
- Return the current available number by referencing *sequence.CURRVAL*.

Indexes

Indexes are used to improve the query retrieval speed.

Users can view the definitions of the indexes in the **USER_INDEXES** data dictionary view.

An index can be dropped by the creator or a user with the **DROP ANY INDEX** privilege by using the **DROP INDEX** statement.

Synonyms

DBAs can create public synonyms and users can create private synonyms for convenience by using the **CREATE SYNONYM** statement. Synonyms permit short names or alternative names for objects. Remove synonyms by using the **DROP SYNONYM** statement.

Practice Overview

- **Creating sequences**
- **Using sequences**
- **Creating nonunique indexes**
- **Displaying data dictionary information about sequences and indexes**
- **Dropping indexes**

13-26

Copyright © Oracle Corporation, 1999. All rights reserved.

ORACLE®

Practice Overview

In this practice, you will create a sequence to be used when populating your DEPARTMENT table. You will also create implicit and explicit indexes.

Practice 13

1. Create a sequence to be used with the primary key column of the DEPARTMENT table. The sequence should start at 60 and have a maximum value of 200. Have your sequence increment by ten numbers. Name the sequence DEPT_ID_SEQ.
2. Write a script to display the following information about your sequences: sequence name, maximum value, increment size, and last number. Name the script p13q2.sql. Execute your script.

SEQUENCE_NAME	MAX_VALUE	INCREMENT_BY	LAST_NUMBER
CUSTID	1.000E+27	1	109
DEPT_ID_SEQ	200	10	60
ORDID	1.000E+27	1	622
PRODID	1.000E+27	1	200381

3. Write an interactive script to insert a row into the DEPARTMENT table. Name your script p13q3.sql. Be sure to use the sequence that you created for the ID column. Create a customized prompt to enter the department name. Execute your script. Add two departments named Education and Administration. Confirm your additions.
4. Create a non-unique index on the foreign key column (dept_id) in the EMPLOYEE table.
5. Display the indexes and uniqueness that exist in the data dictionary for the EMPLOYEE table. Save the statement into a script named p13q5.sql.

INDEX_NAME	TABLE_NAME	UNIQUENESS
EMPLOYEE_DEPT_ID_IDX	EMPLOYEE	NONUNIQUE
EMPLOYEE_ID_PK	EMPLOYEE	UNIQUE

